



# C5 AIRCROSS

## Owner's Manual

nothing  
moves us  
like **citroën**



## WELCOME

Thank you for choosing Citroën C5 Aircross.

This document contains the key information and recommendations you will need to be able to explore your vehicle in complete safety.

We strongly recommend familiarising yourself with it, as well as the Service Booklet.

Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are for guidance only.

Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this document.

If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Owner's Manual** is passed on to the new owner.

## OBTAIN THE OWNER'S MANUAL



### ONLINE

View or download the Owner's Manual at the following address:

<http://service.citroen.com/ACddb/>

Scan this QR Code for direct access.

Select:

- the language,
- the vehicle and body style,
- the issue period of the Owner's Manual corresponding to the date of 1st registration of the vehicle.



This symbol indicates the latest information available.



### PRINTED VERSION

Order the Owner's Manual in paper format from a CITROËN dealer.

|                                                     |          |                                                     |          |                                              |            |
|-----------------------------------------------------|----------|-----------------------------------------------------|----------|----------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>Introduction</b>                                 | <b>1</b> | <b>Infotainment System</b>                          | <b>4</b> | Towing the vehicle                           | <b>180</b> |
| Eco-driving                                         | 2        | Introduction                                        | 79       | Event Data Recorder                          | 182        |
| Link to Company App and Website                     | 3        | Multimedia System                                   | 84       |                                              |            |
| How To Use This Manual                              | 3        | 3rd Party Apps                                      | 97       | <b>Maintenance and vehicle care</b>          | <b>8</b>   |
| Propulsion Types                                    | 4        |                                                     |          | Introduction To Maintenance And Vehicle Care | 183        |
| Vehicle Modifications-Alterations                   | 5        | <b>Starting &amp; Operating</b>                     | <b>5</b> | Scheduled Servicing                          | 184        |
|                                                     |          | Starting and Stopping The Engine                    | 99       | Engine Compartment                           | 187        |
| <b>Getting to know your vehicle</b>                 | <b>2</b> | Brakes                                              | 103      | Vehicle Maintenance                          | 190        |
| Keys                                                | 8        | Transmission                                        | 106      | Fuses                                        | 191        |
| Audible Pedestrian Warning System (MHEV, PHEV, BEV) | 12       | Drive Modes                                         | 109      | Bulb Replacement                             | 191        |
| Vehicle Security System                             | 13       | Engine Exhaust                                      | 111      | Tires and Wheels                             | 191        |
| Doors                                               | 15       | Fuel                                                | 112      | Bodywork-Exterior Care                       | 193        |
| Windows                                             | 20       | Electrified Vehicles                                | 112      | Interior Care                                | 193        |
| Mirrors                                             | 21       | Vehicle Loading                                     | 122      |                                              |            |
| Memory settings                                     | 22       | Trailer Towing                                      | 123      | <b>Technical Specifications</b>              | <b>9</b>   |
| Head Restraints                                     | 23       | Driving Tips                                        | 125      | Vehicle Identification                       | 197        |
| Seats                                               | 24       |                                                     |          | Vehicle Data                                 | 197        |
| Seat Belts                                          | 28       | <b>Advanced Driving Assistance Systems</b>          | <b>6</b> | Wheels and Tires                             | 202        |
| Airbag System                                       | 30       | Introduction to Assistance Systems                  | 127      |                                              |            |
| Child Restraints                                    | 34       | Detection Sensors                                   | 128      | <b>Customer Information</b>                  | <b>10</b>  |
| Steering Wheel                                      | 43       | Vehicle Stability Assistance                        | 129      | Vehicle data recording and privacy           | 204        |
| Ignition Switch                                     | 43       | Collision Avoidance System                          | 130      |                                              |            |
| Wipers and Washers                                  | 44       | Braking Performance Assistance Systems              | 137      |                                              |            |
| Exterior Lights                                     | 45       | Visibility Enhancement Assistance System            | 138      |                                              |            |
| Interior Lights                                     | 53       | Lane Centering Assistance System                    | 139      |                                              |            |
| Sunroof                                             | 54       | Parking and Reverse Operations Assistance System    | 146      |                                              |            |
| Interior Storage - Interior Features                | 55       | Driver's Attention Assistance System                | 152      |                                              |            |
|                                                     |          | Speed Control Assistance System                     | 155      |                                              |            |
| <b>Dashboard Instruments And Control</b>            | <b>3</b> | Off-road and Low-Range Operations Assistance System | 163      |                                              |            |
| Instrument panel overview                           | 60       | Utility Assistance Features                         | 164      |                                              |            |
| Steering Wheel Controls                             | 62       |                                                     |          |                                              |            |
| Side Control Bar                                    | 62       | <b>In case of emergency</b>                         | <b>7</b> |                                              |            |
| Central Controls                                    | 63       | Hazard Warning Lights                               | 168      |                                              |            |
| Instrument cluster                                  | 63       | Assist And SOS                                      | 168      |                                              |            |
| Warning and indicator lights                        | 65       | Warning Triangle                                    | 169      |                                              |            |
| Climate Controls                                    | 72       | Jacking the Vehicle and Wheel Changing              | 169      |                                              |            |
| Infotainment Display                                | 75       | Tire Repair Toolkit                                 | 174      |                                              |            |
| Head-Up Display                                     | 77       | Jump Starting                                       | 177      |                                              |            |

## Eco-driving

Eco-driving refers to a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimize the vehicle's energy consumption (fuel and/or electricity) and CO2 emissions.

### OPTIMIZE THE USE OF THE GEARBOX

With an automatic gearbox, favor automatic mode. Do not depress the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear shift indicator prompts you to engage the most suitable gear. Whenever this indication is displayed on the instrument panel, follow it straight away.

With an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

### DRIVE SMOOTHLY

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal and press the accelerator gradually. These practices help to save on energy consumption, reduce CO2 emissions and decrease general traffic noise.

With a hybrid engine, engine braking is more efficient. Anticipate slowing down as much as you can and, if possible, favor deceleration with engine braking in order to charge the traction battery, to increase all-electric driving and to reduce fuel consumption.

When the traffic is flowing smoothly, select the cruise control.

### CONTROL THE USE OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.

At speeds above 31 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open. Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (e.g. sunroof blind, window blinds).

Unless automatically regulated, switch off the air conditioning as soon as the desired temperature has been reached.

Switch off the demisting and defrosting functions, if they are not managed automatically.

Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible. Adapt your use of the headlights and/or fog lights to the level of visibility, in accordance with current legislation in the country in which you are driving.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter (other than in severe wintry conditions: temperature below -23°C). The vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, avoid connecting your multimedia devices (e.g. film, music, video game) to help reduce the consumption of energy.

Disconnect all portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

### LIMIT THE CAUSES OF EXCESS CONSUMPTION

Spread loads throughout the vehicle. Place the heaviest items in the trunk as close as possible to the rear seats.

Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and minimize wind resistance (e.g. roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer).

Preferably, use a roof box.

Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tires and refit summer tires.

### COMPLY WITH THE SERVICING INSTRUCTIONS

Check tire pressures regularly, with the tires cold, referring to the label in the door aperture on the driver's side.

Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey.
- at each change of season.
- after a long period out of use.

Do not forget the spare wheel and, where applicable, the tires on your trailer or caravan. Have your vehicle serviced regularly (e.g. engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter, etc.). Observe the schedule of operations in the manufacturer's service schedule.

When filling the fuel tank, do not continue after the third cut-out of the nozzle, to avoid overflow.

You will only see the fuel consumption of your new vehicle settle down to a consistent average after the first 1,900 miles (3,000 kilometers).

## OPTIMIZING THE DRIVING RANGE OF ELECTRIFIED VEHICLES

The vehicle's consumption of electrical energy greatly depends on the route profile, speed and driving style, as well as the use of the heating/air conditioning.

Favor the **ECO** and **CHARGE** zones of the power indicator by driving smoothly and at a steady speed.

## ELECTRIC VEHICLES

Program a destination into the vehicle's GPS navigation system to optimize consumption during a journey.

Anticipate the need to slow down, and brake smoothly, whenever possible using engine braking with the regenerative braking function, which will move the power indicator into the "**CHARGE**" zone.

Use the air conditioning rather than the heating to demist the passenger compartment.

## Link to Company App and Website

Installation of the app with the following QR code:



<https://shorturl.at/EVOSi>

- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each section shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.
- This Owner's Manual depicts left-hand drive vehicles. Operation is similar for right-hand drive vehicles.
- The Owner's Manual uses the engine identifier code. The corresponding sales designation and engineering code can be found in the section "Technical data".
- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- Displays may not support your specific language.
- Display messages and interior labeling are written in **bold** letters.

## SYMBOLS KEY



Safety warning



Additional information



Environmental protection feature



Left-hand drive vehicle

## How To Use This Manual

- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. **Some descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model variant, country specifications, special equipment or accessories.**



Right-hand drive vehicle



Location of the equipment / button described using a black area.



## SAFETY MESSAGES



### Danger

Text marked **Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.



### Warning

Text marked **Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.



### Caution

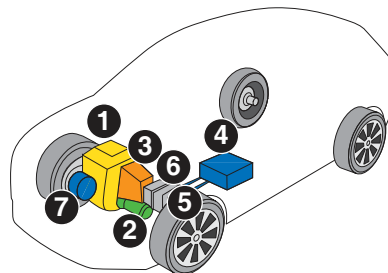
Text marked **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

## Propulsion Types

### INTERNAL COMBUSTION ENGINE (ICE)

An ICE vehicle is propelled by an Internal Combustion Engine, diesel or petrol, only.

## MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)



1. Petrol engine
2. Electric motor
3. 6-speed electric dual-clutch automatic gearbox (e-DCS6)
4. 48 V traction battery
5. 12 V accessory battery
6. DC/DC converter
7. Belt starter

**The MHEV technology requires no connection to charge the traction battery.**

The **Hybrid system** does not operate continuously, but is activated according to the state of the vehicle, the state of charge of the traction battery, the thermal comfort of the passenger compartment (switching on the heating or air conditioning), the driving

conditions (acceleration, deceleration, braking, engine start-up) and the road conditions (uphill, downhill):

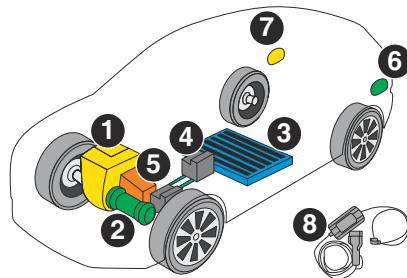
- The vehicle always starts with the petrol engine to ensure the efficiency of the catalytic converter and the availability of the brake assist.
- In normal driving, the petrol engine and electric motor work together or separately to optimize fuel consumption and electrical energy or to charge the traction battery.
- During the acceleration phases, the electric motor provides an additional boost to reach the torque needed as fast as possible and to improve the acceleration at low speed.
- During the deceleration phases, the electric motor charges the traction battery, using the inertia of the vehicle.
- The driving in all-electric is possible for parking maneuvering, for 20 mph (30 km/h) speed zones in city, on urban and country roads with smooth driving and on motorways in slight deceleration or downhill.

The electric motor is integrated into the automatic gearbox.

The DC/DC converter provides the link between the 12 V accessory power supply and the 48 V traction power supply.

The belt starter restarts the petrol engine after driving in all-electric.

## PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



1. Petrol engine
2. Electric motor
3. Traction battery
4. 12 V accessories batteries
5. 7-speed electric dual-clutch automatic gearbox (e-DCS7)
6. Charging flap
7. Fuel filler flap
8. Domestic charging cable

The **PHEV** technology combines two sources of energy: that of the petrol engine and that of the electric motor, which drive the front wheels (traction).

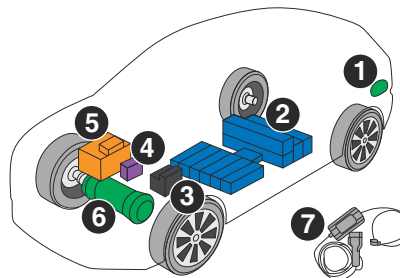
The engine and the motor can operate alternately or simultaneously, according to

the driving mode selected and the driving conditions.

The electric power alone provides the mobility of the vehicle in **Electric** mode, and in **Hybrid** mode in case of moderate demand. It assists the petrol engine during starting and acceleration phases.

The electric power is supplied by a rechargeable traction battery.

## BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE (BEV)



1. Charging flap
2. Traction battery
3. Accessory battery
4. Heat pump
5. On-board charger
6. Electric motor
7. Charging cable

The charging connectors **1** enable **3** types of charging:

- Domestic charging in mode 2 using a domestic socket and associated charging cable
- Accelerated charging in mode 3 using an accelerated charging unit.
- Superfast charging in mode 4 using a fast public charger.

The 400 V traction battery **2** uses Lithium-Ion technology. It stores and supplies the energy required for the operation of the electric motor, air conditioning and heating. Its charge level is represented by an indicator and a reserve power warning light on the instrument panel. The 12 V accessory battery **3** powers the vehicle's conventional electrical system. It is recharged automatically by the traction battery via the on-board charger.

The heat pump **4** provides passenger compartment heating and regulates traction battery and on-board charger cooling. The on-board charger **5** manages the domestic charging (mode 2) and accelerated charging (mode 3) of the traction battery as well as the recharging of the 12 V accessory battery. The electric motor **6** provides propulsion in accordance with the selected driving mode and driving conditions. It recovers energy during vehicle braking and deceleration phases.

## Vehicle Modifications- Alterations



### Warning

Do not remove the labels attached in different places on your vehicle. They include safety warnings as well as identification information for the vehicle.



### Warning

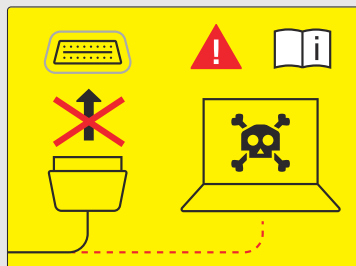
Depending on country regulations, some safety equipment may be mandatory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalyzers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.



### Caution

#### Installing electrical accessories

The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not approved by the Manufacturer may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a dealer for information on the range of approved accessories.



As a safety measure, access to the **diagnostic socket**, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for authorized dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The Manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.

Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorized by the Manufacturer or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the Manufacturer will result in the suspension of the commercial warranty.



### Caution

#### Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters

Before installing a radio communication transmitter with an external aerial, you must without fail contact a dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the UN ECE Regulation 10.

## ACCESSORIES PURCHASED BY THE OWNER

If after buying the car, you decide to install electrical accessories that require a permanent electrical supply (e.g. radio, satellite anti-theft system, etc.) or accessories that in any case burden the electrical supply, contact a STELLANTIS dealer, whose personnel will check whether the electrical system of the car is able to withstand the load required, or whether it needs to be integrated with a more powerful conventional battery.



### Warning

Take care when fitting additional spoilers, alloy wheel rims or non-standard wheel hubs: they could reduce the ventilation of the brakes and affect efficiency under sharp, repeated braking or on long descents.

Make sure that nothing obstructs the pedal stroke (mats, etc.).

## ELECTRIC DEVICES INSTALLATION

Electrical and electronic devices installed after buying the car in the context of after-sales service must carry the following label: The Manufacturer authorizes the installation of transceivers provided that installation is carried out at a specialized center, in a workmanlike fashion and in compliance with manufacturer's specifications.



### Warning

Traffic police may not allow the car on the road if devices have been installed which modify the features of the car.

This may also cause invalidation of warranty in relation to faults caused by the change either directly or indirectly related to it.

The Manufacturer all not be liable for damage caused by the installation of accessories either not supplied or recommended by the Manufacturer and/or not installed in compliance with the provided instructions.

## RADIO TRANSMITTING EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

Radio transmitter equipment (car mobile phones, CB radios, amateur radio etc.) cannot be used inside the car unless a separate aerial is mounted on the roof.

## Keys

### RADIO REMOTE CONTROL FUNCTION



The remote control can be used to perform the following remote functions (depending on version):

- Unlocking/Locking/Deadlocking the vehicle.
- Unlocking - Opening/Closing- Locking the boot.
- Folding/Unfolding the door mirrors.
- Activating/Deactivating the alarm.
- Locating the vehicle.
- Closing the windows.
- Closing the sunroof.
- Activating the vehicle's electronic immobilizer.
- Back-up procedures allow the vehicle to be locked/unlocked in the event of a failure of the remote control, the central locking, the battery, etc.

For more information on the procedures in case of fault, refer to the corresponding section.

#### Built-in key

The key contains a mechanical back-up that allows the following operations in case the remote control and the electronic key functions stop working:

- Activation/Deactivation of the manual child lock.
- Activation/Deactivation of the front passenger airbag.
- Back-up Unlocking/Locking of the doors.



- To eject the key or put it back in place, pull and hold the button.



#### Warning

Once the built-in key is ejected, always keep it with you to be able to carry out the corresponding back-up procedures.

### Unlocking the vehicle



Selective unlocking (driver's door, boot) is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

#### Complete unlocking

- If the selective unlocking is deactivated, press the unlocking button.

#### Selective unlocking

##### Driver's door

- Press the unlocking button.

The driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked (Petrol or Hybrid).

The driver's door and the charging flap are unlocked (Rechargeable hybrid or Electric).

- Press it **again** to unlock the other doors and the boot.

The charging nozzle can be unplugged on the second press.

Complete or selective unlocking, and alarm deactivation (depending on version), is confirmed by the flashing of the direction indicators and the lighting of the daytime running lights.

Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold.

#### Selective unlocking and opening of the tailgate

By default, selective unlocking of the tailgate is deactivated and its motorized operation is activated.



- ▶ With a motorized tailgate: press and hold this button to unlock the boot and trigger the motorized opening of the tailgate.
- ▶ With a non-motorized tailgate: press and hold this button to unlock the boot and partially open the tailgate.

When selective unlocking of the tailgate is activated, the doors and the fuel filler flap remain locked.

After a selective unlocking of the tailgate, if the vehicle has not been fully unlocked, the tailgate will automatically relock after closing. If selective unlocking of the tailgate is deactivated, pressing the button unlocks the whole vehicle.



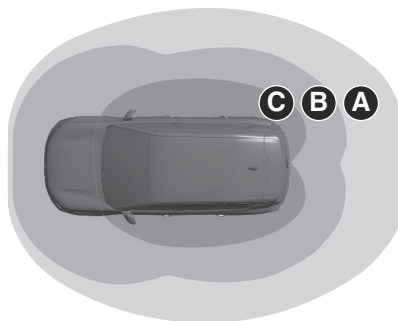
#### Tip

If motorised operation of the tailgate is deactivated, pressing the button partially opens the tailgate. To lock the vehicle, it is necessary to close the tailgate again.

## PROXIMITY KEYLESS ENTRY AND START

This is a Keyless Entry and Start system. It enables automatic vehicle locking/unlocking simply by detecting the electronic key. As long as the driver has the electronic key on their person, the vehicle unlocks as they approach and locks when they walk away.

Key recognition zones:



**Zone A:** welcome lighting on approaching the vehicle (between 2 and 5 meters from the vehicle).

**Zone B:** automatic locking on moving away from the vehicle (about 2 meters from the vehicle).

**Zone C:** automatic unlocking on approaching the vehicle (between 1 and 2 meters from the vehicle).



Automatic functions are configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

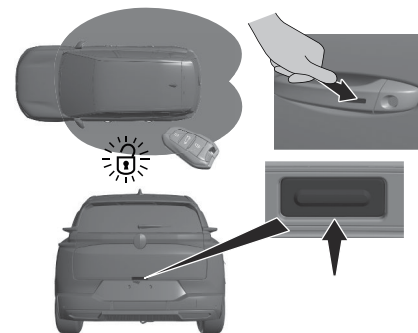


#### Tip

If the electronic key remains around the vehicle (zones **A**, **B** or **C**) for more than 15 minutes without action, the automatic functions are deactivated. To unlock or lock the vehicle, use the remote control or press the driver's door handle.

If using the door handle does not lock/unlock the vehicle, bring the electronic key closer and repeat the desired action.

### Unlocking



### Complete Unlocking

The vehicle (doors and boot) unlocks:

- Either automatically as the driver approaches in zone C, if the automatic functions are activated.
- Or by gently pressing the driver's door handle or the button on the boot.

Unlocking, and alarm deactivation (depending on version), is confirmed by the flashing of the direction indicators and lighting of the daytime running lights.

Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold.

### Selective Unlocking



Selective unlocking (driver's door, boot) is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

It operates:

- Either automatically when approaching the driver's door, if the automatic functions are activated.
- Or by gently pressing the driver's door handle.

The driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked (ICE/MHEV).

The driver's door and the charging flap are unlocked (PHEV/BEV).

- Once inside the vehicle, with the driver's door closed, to unlock all accesses, press the central locking button twice or pull the opening control on any door.

### Selective Unlocking of the Tailgate

The tailgate unlocks automatically as you approach the rear of the vehicle.

- Press the tailgate control to open the boot.

The doors remain locked.

After a selective unlocking of the tailgate, if the vehicle has not been fully unlocked, the tailgate will automatically relock after closing.

### Locking



Depending on version, the activation/ deactivation of the lock audible signal is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

Ignition off, with the doors and boot closed, the vehicle locks:

- Either automatically, upon leaving zone **B**, if the automatic functions are activated.

- Or by gently pressing the driver's door handle.

Locking is confirmed by the lighting of the direction indicators, and by a double audible signal when the vehicle is locked upon walking away.

It is not possible to lock the vehicle if the electronic key is left inside the vehicle.

### Deadlocking



#### Warning

Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also disables the central locking button.

The horn remains operational.

**Never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.**

- Ignition off, press the locking button.
- Press the locking button again within 3 seconds to deadlock the vehicle (confirmed by the temporary lighting of the direction indicators).

For vehicles equipped with the Proximity Keyless Entry and Start system, a double audible signal indicates that the vehicle is not deadlocked.

### Advice



#### Tip

If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Start system has been left inside

the vehicle, central locking will not take place.



#### Tip

If the vehicle is unlocked but the doors or tailgate are not subsequently opened, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If fitted to the vehicle, the alarm is automatically reactivated (if previously activated).



#### Tip

#### Motorised tailgate

After closing completely, the vehicle will lock automatically even if the electronic key is outside the recognition areas.



#### Tip

Automatic folding/unfolding of the door mirrors is configured in the touch screen.

For more information on **Mirrors**, refer to the corresponding section.



#### Warning

As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle, even for a short time, without taking the Keyless Entry and Start system's electronic key with you.

Be aware of the risk of theft of the vehicle if the key is present in one of the defined areas while the vehicle is unlocked.

**Warning**

In order to preserve the battery in the electronic key and the vehicle's battery:

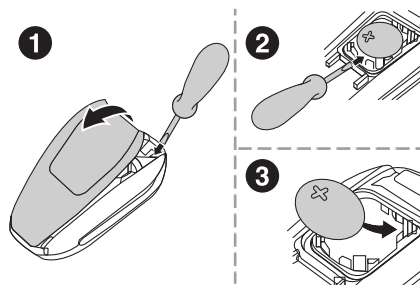
- The unlocking on approach function (zone C) automatically switches to hibernation mode after several days (approximately one week), without being used. To unlock the vehicle, use the remote control or press on the driver's door handle. The next time the vehicle is started, the automatic unlocking and locking functions will be reactivated.
- If the welcome lighting is triggered several times in succession without the vehicle subsequently being started, it will be deactivated.
- All "hands-free" functions switch to hibernation mode after 21 days without being used. To restore these functions, unlock the vehicle using the remote control and start the engine. The door mirrors unfold only when the ignition is switched on.

**Tip****Electrical interference**

The electronic key may not work if it is close to an electronic device (e.g. mobile telephone (switched on or on standby), laptop computer, strong magnetic fields). If this occurs, move the electronic key away from the electronic device.

**Replacing the Battery**

A message is displayed on the instrument panel when the battery needs changing.

**Battery type: CR2032/3 volts.**

- Unclip the cover by inserting a small screwdriver in the slot and lift the cover.
- Remove the flat battery from its housing.
- Put the new battery in place, respecting the polarity. Start by inserting it into the contacts located in the corner, then clip the cover onto the unit.
- Reinitialize the remote control.

For more information on **Reinitializing the remote control**, refer to the corresponding section.

**Restriction**

Do not throw remote control batteries away, as they contain metals that are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved disposal point.

**Warning**

This equipment contains a button type battery.

Do not swallow the battery. Risk of chemical burns! Swallowing the battery can cause serious internal burning in only 2 hours and can be fatal.

If batteries have been swallowed or inserted into a part of the body, seek immediate medical advice.

Keep new and used batteries out of the reach of children.

If the battery compartment does not close properly, stop using the product and keep it out of the reach of children.

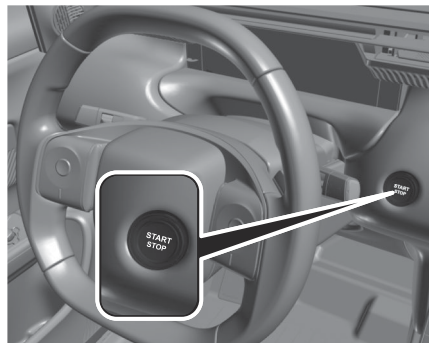
**Warning**

Risk of explosion if the battery is replaced with an incorrect type! Replace the battery with the same type.

**Warning**

Risk of explosion or leaking of inflammable liquid or gas!  
Do not use in/store in/place in an environment where the temperature is extremely high or where the pressure is extremely low due to very high altitude.  
Do not try to burn, crush or cut a used battery.

## Resynchronisation of the Remote Control With Keyless Entry and Start :



- ▶ Enter the vehicle and keep the key in hand.
- ▶ Press the Start/Stop button without depressing the pedals.
- ▶ Immediately press any button on the key for a few seconds.
- ▶ Press the Start/Stop button again.

The remote control is now fully operational again

## BACKUP PROCEDURES

### Lost keys, remote control, electronic key

Go to a dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate, your personal identification documents and if possible, the label bearing the key code.

The dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code, enabling a new key to be ordered.

## Complete unlocking/locking of the vehicle with the key

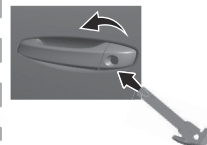
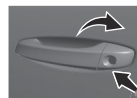
Use this procedure in the following situations:

- Remote control battery discharged.
- Remote control malfunction.
- Vehicle battery discharged.
- Vehicle in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.

In the first case, change the remote control battery.

In the second case, reinitialize the remote control.

Refer to the corresponding sections.



- ▶ Insert the key in the notch of the lock cover and remove the lock cover.
- ▶ Insert the key into the door lock.
- ▶ Turn the key towards the front or the rear to unlock or lock the vehicle.



### Tip

If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will not be activated when locking with the key. If the alarm is activated, the siren sounds when the door is opened; switch on the ignition to stop it.

## Central locking not functioning

Use these procedures in the following cases:

- Central locking malfunction.
- Battery disconnected or discharged.



### Warning

In the event of a malfunction of the central locking system, the battery must be disconnected to ensure that the vehicle is locked fully.

## Front left-hand door

- ▶ Insert the key into the lock and turn it towards the front or rear of the vehicle to lock or unlock the door.

## Other doors

### Unlocking

- ▶ Pull the interior door opening control.

## Audible Pedestrian Warning System (MHEV, PHEV, BEV)

This system alerts pedestrians that the vehicle is approaching, when driving in all electric (MHEV) or in **Electric** driving mode (PHEV/BEV).

The pedestrian horn operates once the vehicle is moving and at speeds of up to 19 mph (30 km/h), in forward or reverse gear. This function cannot be deactivated.

## FAULT



In the event of a malfunction, this warning light illuminates on the instrument panel.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Vehicle Security System

### CENTRAL LOCKING SYSTEM



- Press this button to lock/unlock the vehicle (doors and boot) from inside the passenger compartment.

The indicator light comes on to confirm the central locking of the vehicle.



#### Warning

Central locking does not take place if any of the doors are open.



#### Tip

#### When locking/deadlocking from the outside

When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the indicator lamp flashes and the button is deactivated.

- After normal locking, pull one of the interior door controls to unlock the vehicle.
- After deadlocking, you must use the remote control, the "Keyless Entry and Start" system or the built-in key to unlock the vehicle.

### Automatic Relocking After Driving Off

The doors and boot lock automatically while driving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)). To deactivate/reactivate this function (activated by default):

- Press the button until a confirmation message appears.



#### Tip

#### Transporting long or voluminous objects

Press the central locking control to drive with the boot open and the doors locked. Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the sound of the locks rebounding will be heard and an alert will be displayed.

### Automatic Relock after Unlocking

This feature automatically relocks the vehicle a short time after unlocking with the remote

control or electronic key, provided the vehicle has not been opened.

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM



The anti-theft alarm system is combined with the anti-theft locking system. It monitors:

- doors, tailgate, hood
- movement in the passenger compartment including adjoining load compartment
- vehicle attitude, e.g. if it is raised
- ignition
- battery, central control and siren wiring, e.g. if they are disconnected.

If the sunroof remains open, the passenger compartment is not monitored. During temperature preconditioning, the passenger compartment and the vehicle inclination are not monitored.



#### Tip

When the vehicle is parked, the alarm will not be triggered if the vehicle is knocked.



### Tip

#### Rechargeable hybrid vehicles

Depending on version, interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring may be reduced or even suspended during temperature preconditioning sequences.

### Activation

- Switch off the ignition and exit the vehicle.
- Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the remote control or by pressing on the driver's door handle.

The monitoring system is also activated when the driver moves away from the vehicle. When the monitoring system is active, the red indicator light in the button flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.

The exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after 5 seconds and the interior volumetric monitoring after 45 seconds.



### Warning

#### Door, trunk or hood

If an opening is not properly closed, the vehicle is not locked, but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after 45 seconds, at the same time as the interior volumetric monitoring.



### Warning

#### Sunroof

If the sunroof remains open, the vehicle is locked with exterior perimeter monitoring

activated but without interior volumetric or anti-tilt monitoring.



### Tip

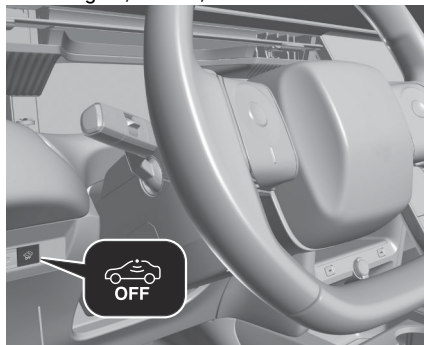
#### Central glasses holder

Make sure that the glasses holder, located in the roof console, is closed before getting out of the vehicle and activating the alarm.

### Activation without monitoring of passenger compartment and vehicle inclination

Switch off the monitoring of passenger compartment and vehicle inclination when animals are being left in the vehicle, because of high volume ultrasonic signals and because movements could trigger the alarm. Also switch off when the vehicle is on a ferry or train.

Close tailgate, bonnet, windows.



- Press . The LED in the button illuminates for a maximum of 10 minutes.
- Close doors.

- Activate the anti-theft alarm system.

### Deactivation

- Press one of the remote control unlocking buttons:



or

- Unlock the vehicle by pressing the driver's door handle.

The monitoring system is also deactivated when the driver approaches the vehicle. The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator light in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.



### Tip

**After unlocking using the remote control.** If the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or the boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is automatically activated.

## Triggering of the Alarm

When triggered, the alarm siren sounds and the hazard warning lights flash simultaneously. The number and duration of alarm signals are stipulated by legislation.



- ▶ Press this button or the ignition to deactivate the anti-theft alarm system.

A triggered alarm, which has not been interrupted by the driver, will be indicated by the hazard warning lights. They will flash quickly four times the next time the vehicle is unlocked with the radio remote control.

If the vehicle's battery is to be disconnected (e.g. for maintenance work), the alarm siren must be deactivated as follows: switch the ignition on then off, then disconnect the vehicle's battery within 15 seconds.

If the battery has been reconnected (e.g. after maintenance work), wait for 10 minutes to restart the engine.

## Tracking function

If an attempted theft of the vehicle is detected, this function sends a notification to the driver's smartphone.

Access to this function requires prior subscription to the Manufacturer's connected alarm service.

For any information relating to the connected alarm service, contact a dealer or refer to the general conditions relating to this service.

## Fault

If the LED in the button  illuminates permanently when switching on the ignition, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Locking the vehicle without activation of the anti-theft alarm Lock the vehicle by locking the front door with the key.

If the central locking system cannot be operated with the radio remote control, the cause may be one of the following:

- Fault in radio remote control.
- Electronic key is out of reception range.
- The battery voltage is too low.
- The battery voltage is too high.
- Frequent, repeated operation of the radio remote control while not in range.
- Overload of the central locking system by operating at frequent intervals, the power supply is interrupted for a short time.
- Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources.

## Remote Control Fault

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- ▶ Unlock the vehicle using the key in the front left-hand door lock.
- ▶ Open the door; the alarm is triggered.
- ▶ Switch on the ignition; this stops the alarm.

The indicator light in the button goes off.

## IMMOBILIZER

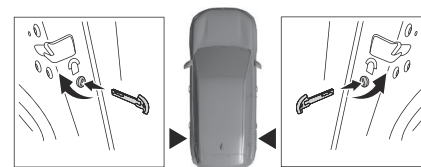
The keys contain a code, which must be recognized by the vehicle before starting is possible.

If the system malfunctions, indicated by the display of a message, the engine will not start. Contact a dealer.

## Doors

### REAR DOORS CHILD LOCKS

The system prevents a rear door from being opened using its interior handle. The control is located on the edge of each rear door (indicated by a marking on the bodywork).



- ▶ Open the doors.
- ▶ For the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.
- ▶ Gently insert the key into the latch located in the door lock, then turn the latch an eighth of a turn towards the outside of the door.
- ▶ Close the doors and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked.

## TAILGATE

### **Warning**

Check that there is enough space to allow for the movement of the tailgate. The tailgate is not designed to hold a bicycle carrier.

### **Warning**

In the event of a malfunction or if you experience difficulty opening or closing the tailgate, have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop without delay, to avoid the issue deteriorating and to prevent any risk of the tailgate dropping, potentially causing serious injury.

### **Danger**

Do not drive with the tailgate open or ajar, e.g. when transporting bulky objects, since toxic exhaust gases, which cannot be seen or smelled, could enter the vehicle. This can cause unconsciousness and even death.

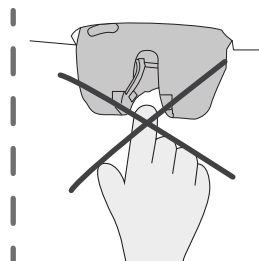
## Power Tailgate operation

### **Warning**

Check that there is enough space to allow for the movement of the motorized tailgate.

### **Warning**

Check that there is enough space to allow for the movement of the liftgate.



### **Warning**

Never insert a finger in the locking system of the motorized tailgate - risk of serious injury!

### **Warning**

To avoid the risk of injury through pinching or trapping, before and during operation of the motorized tailgate:

- ensure that there is no-one close to the rear of the vehicle.
- monitor the activity of the rear passengers, particularly any children.

## Bicycle carrier/Towing device

The motorized tailgate is not designed to support a bicycle carrier.

When installing a bicycle carrier on the towing device with connection of the cable to the trailer socket, the remote controls for the motorized operation of the tailgate will be automatically deactivated.

However, it is still possible to use the two controls located on the motorized tailgate.

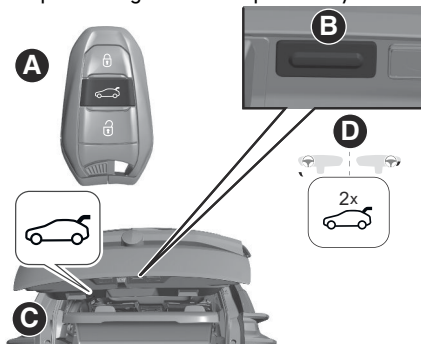


### **Warning**

If using a towing device or bicycle carrier not recommended by the Manufacturer, it is essential to deactivate the motorized operation of the tailgate.

## Motorized Operation

The power tailgate can be operated by:



There are several ways of operating the tailgate:

- Using the Keyless Entry and Start system's electronic key
- Using the exterior tailgate control
- Using the interior tailgate control
- Using the control on the dashboard



The motorized operation of the tailgate is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

**i Tip**  
If motorised operation is not activated, the request to open with this function release the liftgate (partially-open position).

### Opening

- ▶ A long press on the central button **A** of the electronic key.

or

- ▶ A short press on the exterior tailgate control **B** (with the electronic key on your person, if the vehicle or the tailgate is locked).

or

- ▶ Two consecutive presses on the control **D** of the dashboard.

**i Tip**  
The liftgate opens, either completely by default, or to the position memorised beforehand.  
If motorised operation is not activated, these actions release the liftgate (partially-open position).  
When the vehicle is locked, the request to open the liftgate with one of the controls **A** or **B** unlocks the vehicle, or only the liftgate if selective unlocking is activated, prior to the opening of the liftgate.

### Closing

- ▶ A long press on the central button **A** of the electronic key.

or

- ▶ A short press on the exterior tailgate control **B**.

or

- ▶ A short press on the interior tailgate control **C**.

or

- ▶ Two consecutive presses on the control **D** of the dashboard.

**i Tip**  
It is possible to interrupt the operation of the tailgate at any point. Pressing one of these controls again interrupts the movement that is underway. Following the interruption of a movement, pressing one of these controls again reverses the movement.  
If the tailgate is left open for an extended period of time, the tailgate may need to be closed manually to reset power tailgate functionality.

### Manual Operation

#### Opening the tailgate

- ▶ With the vehicle unlocked or with the electronic key in the recognition zone, press the central tailgate control.
- ▶ Raise the tailgate.

**i Tip**  
When selective unlocking is activated, the electronic key must be close to the rear of the vehicle.

**! Warning**  
Check that there is enough space to allow for the movement of the tailgate.

The tailgate is not designed to hold a bicycle carrier.

### Closing the tailgate

- ▶ Lower the tailgate using the interior grips.
- ▶ Release the grips and press down on the outside of the tailgate to close it.

**! Warning**  
In the event of a malfunction or if you experience difficulty opening or closing the tailgate, have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop without delay, to avoid the issue deteriorating and prevent any risk of the tailgate dropping, potentially causing serious injury.

### Resumption of the motorized function

The motorized tailgate function can be activated manually.

- ▶ With the boot open: vigorously move the tailgate a little in the closing direction to activate motorized closing.
- ▶ With the boot partly open: vigorously move the tailgate a little in the opening direction to activate motorized opening.

### Without resumption of the motorized function

- ▶ Move the tailgate as slowly and smoothly as possible.

Assistance from the gas struts is no longer available when opening and closing the motorized tailgate manually. Resistance to opening and closing is therefore quite normal.



### Tip

#### In case of the motor overheating

Repeatedly opening and closing the motorised liftgate can cause overheating of its electric motor, after which opening and closing will not be possible.

Allow at least 10 minutes for the electric motor to cool down before operating the liftgate again.

If you are unable to wait, operate it manually.

#### Manual closing of the motorized tailgate in case of failure

This operation is **only necessary in the case of failure or deinitialisation/loss of the tailgate motor**.

If the failure originates from the battery, it is recommended to recharge it or change it with the tailgate **closed**.

In this situation, a significant force may be needed to close the tailgate.

- Close it gently without slamming, as slowly as possible, by pushing at the center of the tailgate.



### Warning

#### Caution

Do not lower the tailgate by pushing at one of its sides - risk of damage!



### Tip

#### In wintry conditions

To avoid any operating problems, remove the snow or wait until the ice melts

before requesting motorised opening of the liftgate.



### Tip

#### When washing

When washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, do not forget to lock and move away from the vehicle to prevent any risk of unwanted opening.

#### Hands-free function (Hands-Free Tailgate Access)

With the electronic key on your person, this function allows the motorized tailgate to be opened, closed or stopped with a "kicking" movement under the rear bumper.



The "Hands-free Trunk Opening" function is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.



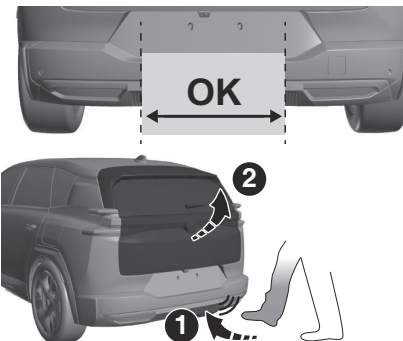
### Warning

Ensure that you are steady on your feet before performing the "kicking" movement.



### Tip

The function is not available when the vehicle is connected (depending on version).



- Position yourself behind the vehicle by the number plate and perform a "kicking" movement in the "OK" detection zone.

The "kicking" movement must be given forwards, smoothly, not too fast and with a vertical movement from low to high. Raise the foot sufficiently and remove it immediately. Acknowledgment of the "kicking" movement is confirmed by the lighting of the direction indicators.



### Warning

"Sideward kicking" movements do not work. If the "kicking" movement has not been detected, wait at least 2 seconds before repeating the movement. Do not perform repetitive "kicking" movements.

If the motorized tailgate has not started to open or close, check that:

- the function is activated.
- the electronic key is on your person, outside the vehicle in the rear recognition area.

- the "kicking" movement was performed in the detection zone, close enough to the bumper.
- the foot was removed from the bumper quickly enough.

**Tip**

When the vehicle is locked, the request to open the liftgate with this function unlocks the vehicle, or only the liftgate if selective unlocking is activated, prior to the opening of the liftgate. Closing the liftgate with the "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function enables you to lock the vehicle.

### Recommendations on the hands-free function (Hands-Free Tailgate Access)

If it does not work, check that the electronic key is not exposed to a source of electromagnetic interference (e.g. smartphone).

The function may be deactivated or affected if there is rain or snow.

The function may not work correctly with a 2 prosthetic leg.

In some circumstances, the tailgate may open or close by itself, particularly when:

- hitching up or removing a trailer.
- operating a towing device.
- fitting or removing a bicycle carrier.
- loading or unloading bicycles on/from a bicycle carrier.
- depositing or lifting something behind the vehicle.
- an animal approaches the rear bumper.
- washing the vehicle.

- maintenance is performed on the vehicle.
- accessing the spare wheel.

To avoid such operating problems, keep the electronic key away from the recognition zone or deactivate the hands-free function.

**Warning****Towing device**

The installation of a towing device may disturb the detection system.

- Perform the "kicking" movement on the right side of the towing device.

**Warning**

Take care not to pass the charging cable under the bumper when connecting or disconnecting it, as this may inadvertently open the tailgate.

### Memorizing an opening position

To limit the opening angle of the motorized tailgate:

- move the tailgate to the desired position manually or by pressing the button.
- press button **C** or the exterior control **B** for more than 3 seconds (memorization is confirmed by a brief audible signal).

A new memorization operation cancels the previous one.

**Tip**

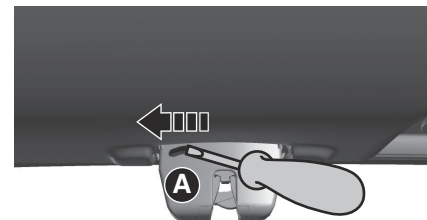
Memorising is not available until the height of opening is more than or equal to 1 metre between the low position and the high position of the liftgate.

### Back-up release

To manually unlock the boot in the event of a battery or central locking failure.

### Unlocking

- Fold the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.



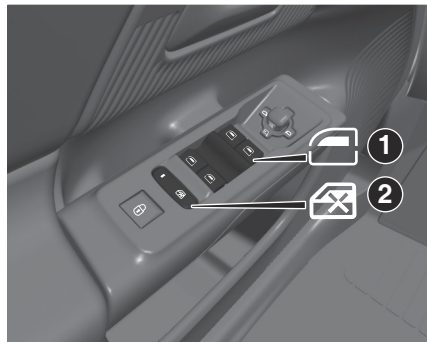
- Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the boot.
- Move the latch to the left.

### Locking after closing

If the fault persists after closing again, the boot will remain locked.

## Windows

### POWER WINDOWS



1. Window switches
2. Rear Windows Controls disable switch.

#### Manual Operation

- To open/close the window, press/pull the switch without passing the point of resistance; the window stops as soon as the switch is released.

#### Automatic Operation

- To open/close the window, press/pull the switch past its resistance point: the window opens/closes completely when the switch is released.

Operating the switch again stops the movement of the window.

**i Tip**  
The electric window controls remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after switching off the ignition. After that time, the controls are disabled. To reactivate them, switch the ignition on again.

#### Anti-pinch

If the window meets an obstacle while rising, it stops and immediately partially lowers again.

**i Tip**  
**Overtaking of the anti-pinch.** After triggering the anti-pinch, check that there are no obstacles blocking the movement of the window.  
Try to close the window again. If the window closing is interrupted by the anti-pinch 3 times in a row (max. 10 seconds between each action), the anti-pinch function becomes inoperable. Without this protection, the window can only be closed manually - risk of injury!

**i Tip**  
**Reinitializing the electric windows**

After reconnecting the battery, or in the event of abnormal window movement, the anti-pinch function must be reinitialized.

#### Reinitializing the electric windows

After reconnecting the battery, or in the event of abnormal window movement, the anti-pinch function must be reinitialized.  
For each window:

- Pull the control until the window is fully closed.
- Release the control, then pull it again for at least one second.

**Warning**  
If an electric window meets an obstacle during operation, the movement of the window must be reversed. To do this, press the relevant control.  
When the driver operates the passengers' electric window controls, it is important to ensure that nothing can prevent the window from closing properly.  
It is important to ensure that passengers use the electric windows correctly.  
Pay particular attention to children when operating the windows.  
Be aware of passengers and/or other persons present when closing windows remotely using the electronic key.  
Do not put your head or arms through the open windows when the vehicle is moving - risk of serious injury!

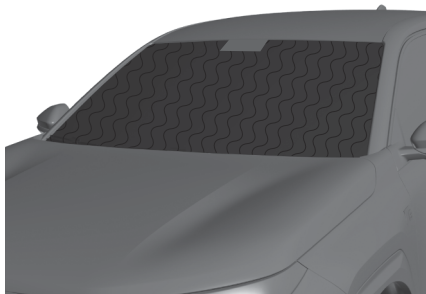
#### Deactivating the rear controls for the rear windows

- Press the Rear Windows Controls Disable Switch to disable the rear seats window controls.

With ignition ON or the engine running, the LED in the button will illuminate when the rear windows are disabled.

## WINDSHIELD

### Heated windshield



In cold weather, this function heats the entire windshield and complements the Automatic Visibility program to speed up the evacuation of elements that interfere with visibility (e.g. dew, mist, frost, snow), located on either side of the windshield.

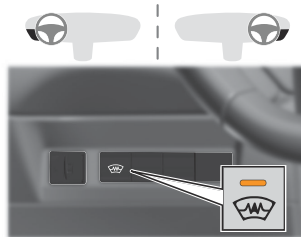
It can be used both before setting off and while driving.



#### Tip

This function only works when the outside temperature is below +5°C

### Switching on/off



- ▶ With the engine running, press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by an indicator light).

The period of operation depends on the outside temperature.

The function switches off automatically to prevent excessive power consumption.

## Mirrors

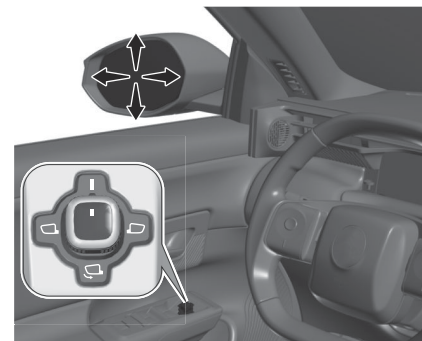
### DOOR MIRRORS



#### Warning

As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the "blind spots". The objects that you see in the mirrors are in fact closer than they appear. Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

### Adjustment



- ▶ Turn the control to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- ▶ Tilt the control in any of the four directions to adjust.
- ▶ Return the control to its central position.

### Manual folding

The mirrors can be folded manually (parking obstruction, narrow garage, etc.).

- ▶ Turn the mirror towards the vehicle.

### Electric folding

Depending on equipment, the door mirrors can be folded electrically.

- ▶ From the inside, with the ignition on, turn the control to the rear mirror folding position.
- ▶ Lock the vehicle from the outside.

**i Tip**  
If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked.

### Electric unfolding

- From outside: unlock the vehicle.
- From inside: with the ignition on, turn the control to either the left or right position.

**i Tip**  
The automatic folding/unfolding of the door mirrors is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application. Before using an automatic car wash, fold the mirrors.

### Automatic tilting in reverse gear

Depending on version, this function allows you to automatically tilt the mirrors downwards to assist with parking manoeuvres in reverse gear. With the engine running, on engaging reverse gear, the mirror glasses tilt downwards. They each return to their original positions:

- A few seconds after coming out of reverse gear.
- Once the vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).
- When the engine is switched off.



It can be activated/deactivated in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

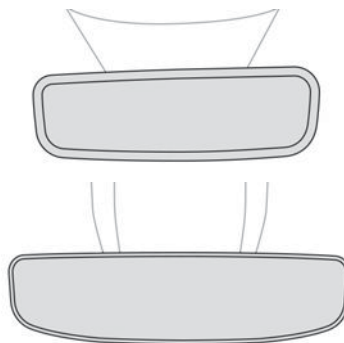
**i Tip**  
The inclination of the mirrors is different between the two sides. It is more important on the passenger side to show more of the ground.

### Demisting/Defrosting



The demisting/defrosting of the door mirrors works with the demisting/defrosting of the rear screen.

### ELECTROCHROME INTERIOR REAR VIEW MIRROR



The electrochrome system uses a sensor that detects the level of exterior brightness and that coming from the rear of the vehicle, in order to automatically and gradually switch between day and night usage.

**i Tip**  
To ensure optimum visibility while manoeuvring, the mirror automatically brightens when reverse gear is engaged. The system is inoperative if the load in the boot exceeds the height of the load space cover or if the load space cover has items placed on it.

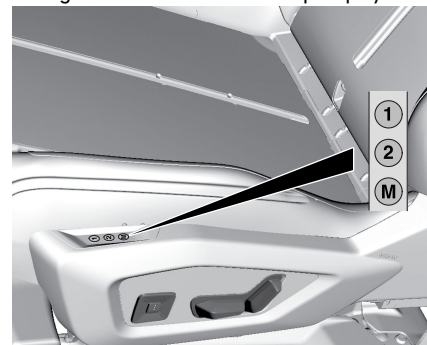
## Memory settings

### DRIVER MEMORY SETTINGS

Associated with the electrically adjusted driver's seat, this function allows two driving positions to be memorised, to make these adjustments easier if there are frequent driver changes.

It records the electric adjustments made to the seat and door mirrors.

This also takes into account the electric settings for the extended head-up display.



## USING BUTTONS 1/2/M

- ▶ Enter the vehicle and switch the ignition on.
- ▶ Adjust the seat, the door mirrors and the extended head-up display.
- ▶ Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within 4 seconds.

An audible signal confirms the memorization. Memorizing a new position cancels the previous position.

## RECALLING A STORED POSITION



### Warning

While the seat is moving, take care that no person or object hinders the automatic movement of the seat.

## WITH THE IGNITION ON OR ENGINE RUNNING

- ▶ Press button **1** or **2** to recall the corresponding position.

An audible signal sounds when adjustment is complete.

You can interrupt the current movement by pressing button **M**, **1** or **2** or by using one of the seat adjustment controls.

A stored position cannot be recalled while driving. The recalling of stored positions is deactivated 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.

## WELCOME FUNCTION

The welcome function makes it easier to get in and out of the vehicle.

After switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door, the front seat moves backwards automatically and then stays in this position, ready for the next entry into the vehicle.

When switching on the ignition, the front seat moves forwards to the stored driving position.

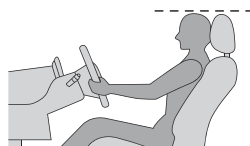


It is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

## Head Restraints

### FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS

#### Adjusting the height



#### Upwards:

- ▶ Pull the head restraint up to the desired position; you can feel the head restraint clicking into position.

#### Downwards:

- ▶ Depending on equipment, press lug **A** and then, while still pressing, lower the head restraint.



### Tip

The head restraint is correctly adjusted when its upper edge is level with the top of the head.

#### Removing a head restraint

- ▶ Pull the head restraint fully up.
- ▶ Depending on version, press lug **A** to release the head restraint and raise it fully.
- ▶ Stow the head restraint securely.

#### Refitting a head restraint

- ▶ Insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding seat backrest.
- ▶ Push the head restraint fully down.
- ▶ Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it down.
- ▶ Adjust the height of the head restraint.



### Warning

Never drive with the head restraints removed; they should be in place and adjusted for the occupant of the seat.

## REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS



They have two positions:

- A **high position**, for when the seat is in use:
  - ▶ Pull the head restraint fully up.
- A **low position**, for stowing, when the seat is not in use:
  - ▶ Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it down.

The rear head restraints can be removed.

### Removing a head restraint

- ▶ Release the backrest using control **1**.
- ▶ Tilt the backrest slightly forwards.
- ▶ Pull the head restraint fully up.
- ▶ Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and remove it completely.

#### **Warning**

Never drive with passengers seated at the rear when the head restraints are removed; the head restraints should be in place and in the high position. The head restraint for the centre seat and those for the outer seats are not interchangeable.



## Seats

### FRONT SEAT POSITION

#### **Warning**

Keep a close watch on the power seats when adjusting them. Do not put objects beneath the power seat and do not impede its movement. There is a risk of injury, particularly for children, and of controls damage. Vehicle passengers should be informed accordingly.

#### **Warning**

The upholstery of the seats has been designed to withstand long-term wear deriving from normal use of the car. Some precautions are however required. Avoid prolonged and/or excessive rubbing against clothing accessories such as metal buckles and Velcro strips which, by applying a high pressure on the upholstery in a small area, could cause it to damage.

#### **Warning**

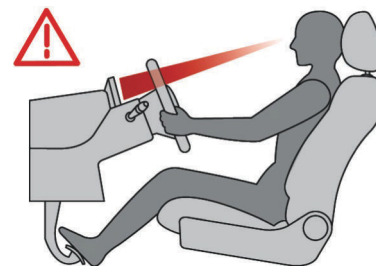
Do not sit closer than 25 cm to the steering wheel, to allow safe airbag deployment.

#### **Warning**

Only drive with the seat correctly adjusted.

#### **Warning**

Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is no person or object that might prevent the full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or of jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.



#### **Tip**

Once these adjustments have been made, check that the instrument panel can be viewed correctly from your driving position.

## MANUAL FRONT SEATS

Adopting a good driving position contributes to improving driver comfort and protection. It also optimizes interior and exterior visibility as well as access to controls.

Some seat adjustments described in this section depend on the trim level and the country in which the vehicle is sold.

**Warning**

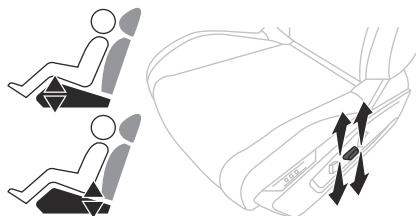
As a safety precaution, adjust the seats only when the vehicle is stationary.

**POWER FRONT SEATS****Tip****Electrically adjustable seats**

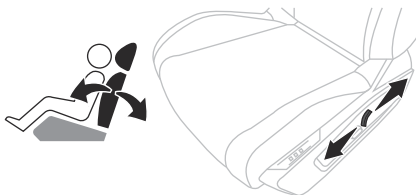
Switch the ignition on to enable the adjustments to be made.

**Longitudinal**

- Push the control forwards or backwards to slide the seat.

**Cushion height and angle**

- Tilt the rear of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required height.
- Tilt the front of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required angle.

**Backrest angle**

- Tilt the control forwards or rearwards.

**Seat cushion angle**

- Press and hold the front or rear of the button to raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion.

**LUMBAR**

The control allows independent adjustment of the depth and vertical position of the lumbar support.



- Press and hold the front or rear of the control to increase or reduce the lumbar support.
- Press and hold the top or bottom of the control to raise or lower the lumbar support area.

**ADAPTIVE BOLSTERS**

This function provides better lateral and lumbar support for the driver and front passenger.

The position is set by inflating/deflating the adaptive bolster using the corresponding page in the touch screen.

It is possible to store the position setting and also to recall the stored position later.

## Settings



- Press the center button of the lumbar adjustment controls.

or



- Press the **Seats** application.

- Select the **Bolster** tab.

- Select the driver or passenger seat.

By default, the initial setting is in the middle position.

- Press buttons "+" or "-", or move the slider to the desired setting.
- Slide to the left/right for quick and easy deflation/inflation of the adaptive bolster.

The modifications are taken into account immediately and are visible on the animation of the corresponding seat in the page.



### Tip

The setting can be reduced to the minimum ("1"), but the function is not completely disabled.

The settings for this function can be stored with the buttons **M/2/1** or with the electronic key.

For more information on **Driver memory setting**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Fault

In the event of a fault, a message is displayed in the touch screen.

The message may be displayed when opening the **Bolster** tab or during setting the position. Go to a dealer or a qualified workshop.

## LOUNGE MODE

The vehicle can switch to Lounge Mode only when it is plugged in.

The Lounge Mode allows the access to the different comfort functions (Heated seats, Ventilated seats, Massage Seats) and the Infotainment system.

## HEATED SEATS

### Activation/Deactivation

There are multiple ways to access the Heated Seats controls:

- Using the related widgets on the home page.
- Using the **Seats and Steering Wheel** tab of



the

**Climate Control** app

- Using the **Heating and Ventilation** tab of



the

**Seats** app.

### Changing Settings

- Select an intensity from the three preset levels: "1" (Low), "2" (Normal) or "3" (High).

- The heated & ventilated seats are memorized when the ignition is switched off.



Additionally, the seat application can be opened directly using the button located on the side of the seat.

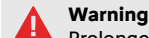


### Tip

Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.

Reduce the heating intensity as soon as possible.

When the seat and passenger compartment have reached a satisfactory temperature, switch the function off; reducing electrical consumption in turn decreases energy consumption.



### Warning

Prolonged use of heated seats is not recommended for people with sensitive skin. There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (e.g. illness, taking medication).

To keep the heated pad intact and to prevent a short circuit:

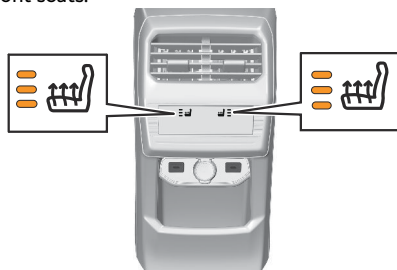
- Do not place heavy or sharp objects on the seat.
- Do not kneel or stand on the seat.
- Do not spill liquids onto the seat.
- Never use the heating function if the seat is damp.
- Do not place wet tissues on heated seats.

- ▶ Do not clean heated seats with liquids.
- ▶ Do not clean the seat with water or unapproved cleaning solutions.

**i Tip**  
When the temperature exceeds 68°F (20°C), the heating functions remain OFF and cannot be activated.

### Rear Seats

Heating of the rear seats can be controlled via buttons on the central console between the front seats.



- Press the button corresponding to the seat.
- Each press changes the heating level; the corresponding number of indicator lights come on.
- To switch off the heating, press the button until all of the indicator lights are off.

The function status is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

## VENTILATED SEATS

### Activation/Deactivation

There are multiple ways to access the Ventilated Seats controls:

- Using the related widgets on the home page.
- Using the **Seats and Steering Wheel** tab of



the **Climate Control** app

- Using the **Heating and Ventilation** tab of



the **Seats** app.

### Changing settings

- ▶ In the **Heating Functions** or **Ventilated Seats** page, select the relevant seat.
- ▶ Select an intensity from the three preset levels: "1" (Low), "2" (Normal) or "3" (High). The settings are memorized when the ignition is switched off.

## MESSAGE SEATS

System with a choice of type of message and adjustment of its intensity.

This system operates with the engine running, as well as in "Lounge" mode.

### Activation/Deactivation



- ▶ In the **Seats** touch screen application, select the **Message** tab.



- ▶ If the settings are suitable, press to activate/deactivate the function in the **Seats** application.

If no action is taken, the display returns to its initial state.

### Changing settings

- ▶ In the **Message** page, select the seat concerned.
- ▶ Select a message intensity from the three preset levels: "1" (Low), "2" (Normal) or "3" (High).
- ▶ Select another type of message from those offered.

The modifications are taken into account immediately and memorized when the ignition is switched off.

Once activated, the system starts a one hour message cycle, made up of sequences of 6 minutes of message followed by 3 minutes at rest.

The system stops automatically at the end of the cycle.

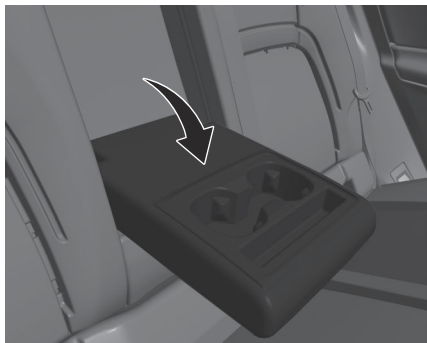
## REAR SEAT POSITION

The rear seats can be reclined for added comfort.

- ▶ Unlock the reclining backrest by using the switch on the panel next to the seat.
- ▶ Lean against the backrest to set the desired angle.
- ▶ Release the switch.

## REAR ARMREST

The center portion of the rear seats can be folded down to function as an armrest, and features two cup-holders and a cell phone storage space.



## FOLDING THE BACKRESTS

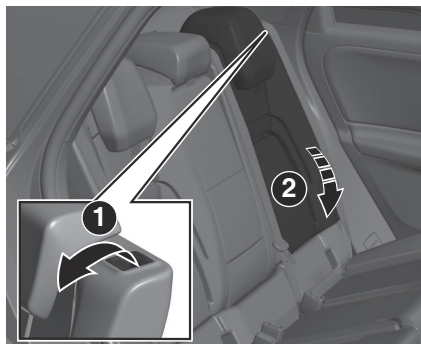


### Warning

Maneuvering the backrests should only be done when the vehicle is stationary.

First steps:

- ▶ Lower the head restraints.
- ▶ If necessary, move the front seats forward.
- ▶ Check that no person or object might interfere with the folding of the backrests (e.g. clothing, luggage).
- ▶ Check that the seat belts are free, not engaged in the buckles. Release them so that the backrest can be moved.



- ▶ Press the backrest release grip **1**.
- ▶ Guide the backrest **2** down to the horizontal position.

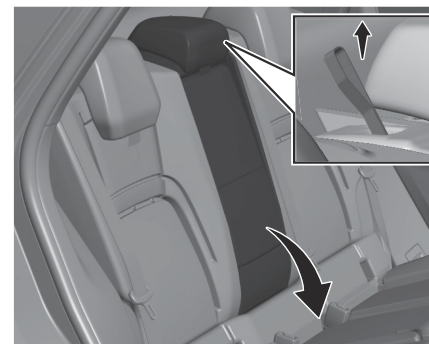


### Tip

When the backrest is released, the red indicator in the release grip is visible.

### Central backrest

The central section of the backrest may be folded down independently of the side sections.



- ▶ Check in advance that the rear armrest is not folded down and that the central head restraint is not raised.
- ▶ From inside the passenger compartment or from the boot, pull on the strap to release.
- ▶ Fold the backrest onto the seat cushion.
- ▶ When repositioning, lift up the backrest fully until it locks.

## Seat Belts



### Warning

Fasten seat belt before each trip. In the event of an accident, people not wearing seat belts endanger their fellow occupants and themselves.

### Inertia reel

The seat belts are equipped with an inertia reel which allows the strap length to adjust automatically to the shape of the user. The seat belt returns to its storage automatically when it is not used.

The inertia reels are fitted with a device which automatically locks the strap in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. It can be released by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly

### Pyrotechnic pretensioning

This system improves safety in the event of a frontal or side impact. Depending on the severity of the impact, the pyrotechnic pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants. The pyrotechnic pretensioning seat belts are enabled when the ignition is on. If the pretensioners are deployed, the following warning light will illuminate:



### Force limiting system

This system reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, thus improving their protection.

### Progressive force limiting system

This system reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, taking their stature into account, thus improving their protection.



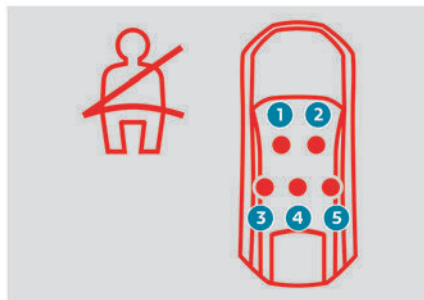
#### Warning

#### In the event of an impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impacts, the pyrotechnic device may trigger before and independently of airbag deployment. Deployment of the

pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system. In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on. Following an impact, have the seat belt system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

## SEAT BELT NOT FASTENED/ UNFASTENED ALERTS



1. Front left seat belt indicator light
2. Front right seat belt indicator light
3. Rear left seat belt indicator light
4. Rear centre seat belt indicator light
5. Rear right seat belt indicator light

### Seat belts not fastened/unfastened identification indicator lights

The red indicator lights (1 to 5) on the instrument panel indicate the location of the

seat belts which are not fastened or have been unfastened.

### Not fastened/unfastened warning light



It comes on in red on the instrument panel as soon as the system detects that a seat belt is not fastened or has been unfastened.

In this case, the vehicle symbol containing the belt indicator lights for each seat also illuminates red.

### Front seat belt not fastened alert



When the ignition is switched on, if the driver or front passenger has not fastened their seat belt, the corresponding indicator light (1 or 2) comes on in red.



At a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h), the warning light and the corresponding indicator light flash red, accompanied by an audible signal for around 2 minutes. After this time has elapsed, the indicator light remains on fixed in red until the seat belt is fastened.

### Rear seat belt not fastened alert



When the ignition is switched on, if one of the rear passengers has not fastened their seat belt, the corresponding indicator light (3, 4 or 5) comes on in red for 1 minute.

## Seat belt unfastened alert



After the ignition is switched on, if the driver or a passenger unfastens their seat belt, the corresponding indicator light (1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) comes on in red.



At a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h), the warning light and the corresponding indicator light flash, accompanied by an audible signal for around 2 minutes. After this time has elapsed, the indicator light remains on until the seat belt has been fastened again



With the ignition on, if the driver or a passenger fastens their seat belt, the corresponding indicator light (1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) comes on in green on the instrument panel.



With the ignition on, if one of the front or rear passenger seats is detected as being unoccupied, the corresponding indicator light (2, 3, 4 or 5) comes on in grey on the instrument panel.



When there are no longer any not fastened/unfastened alerts, the warning light goes off and the green or grey indicator lights remain on for around 30 seconds, then go off.

## ADVICE



### Warning

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off. Wherever seated in the vehicle, you must always fasten the seat belt, even for short journeys. Do not invert the seat belt buckles, as they will not fulfil their role properly. To ensure the proper functioning of the belt buckles, make sure that there are no foreign bodies present (e.g. a coin) before fastening. Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly. After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.



### Warning

#### Installation

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible over the pelvis. The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder. At the front, adjusting the position of the seat belt may require the seat height to be adjusted.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- Be tightened as close to the body as possible.
- Be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it is not twisted.
- Only be used to secure one person.
- Not show signs of tearing or fraying.

- Not be changed or modified, in order to avoid affecting its performance.



### Warning

#### Using the seatbelt when pregnant

The lap seat belt must be positioned as low as possible across the pelvis to prevent pressure on the abdomen.



### Warning

#### Recommendations for children. Use a

suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than 1.5 metres. Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one child.

Never carry a child on your lap.

For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.



### Warning

#### Maintenance

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all work on your vehicle's seat belts, contact a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a dealer is able to provide.

Have the seat belts checked regularly by a dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by dealers.

## Airbag System

System designed to help improve the safety of the occupants sitting in the front seats and the rear outer seats, in the event of a violent collision. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts equipped with a force limiting system.

Electronic detectors record and analyze the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- In the event of violent impact, the airbags deploy instantly and help better protect the occupants of the vehicle; immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly in order not to hinder the visibility or the possible exit of the occupants.
- In the event of a slight impact, a rear impact and under certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not deploy; only the seat belt helps to protect you in these situations.

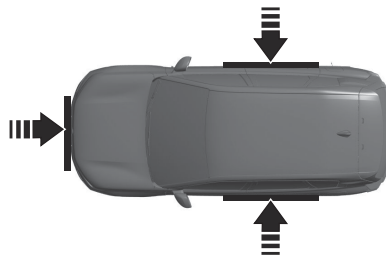
The seriousness of the impact depends on the nature of the obstacle and the speed of the vehicle at the moment of collision.



### Warning

**The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.** This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

### Impact detection zones



- Front impact zone
- Side impact zone



### Tip

When one or more airbags are deployed, the detonation of the pyrotechnic charge incorporated in the system makes a noise and releases a small quantity of smoke. This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience irritation. The detonation noise associated with the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.



### Warning

**For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.** Adopt a normal and upright sitting position. Fasten your seat belt and position it correctly.

Do not place anything between the occupants and the airbags (e.g. child, animal, object), do not fix or attach anything near or in the path of the airbags, as this could cause injuries when they are deployed. Never modify the original definition of the vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags. Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms cannot be ruled out when an airbag is deployed. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time, discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose. After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen, have the airbag systems checked. All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



### Warning

The airbag system deploys in an explosive manner, repairs must be performed by skilled personnel only.



### Warning

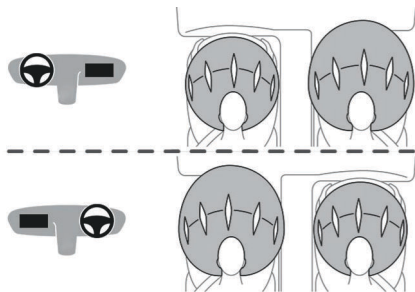
Adding accessories that change the vehicle frame, bumper system, height, front end or side sheet metal, may keep the airbag system from working properly. The operation of the airbag system can also be affected by changing any parts of the front seats, seat belts, airbag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel, instrument panel, inner door seals including the speakers, any of the airbag modules, ceiling or pillar trim, front sensors, side impact sensors or airbag wiring.

**Warning**  
Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

**Warning**  
Do not place anything between the occupants and the airbags, (e.g. Child, animal, object), do not affix or attach anything near to or in the exit path of the airbags, as this could cause injuries when they are deployed.  
Do not affix or attach anything to:

- The steering wheel and dashboard.
- The seat backrests (e.g. clothing).
- The roof.

## FRONT AIRBAGS SYSTEM



This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact, limiting the risk of head and chest injury.

The driver's airbag is fitted in the center of the steering wheel; the front passenger airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

### Deployment

They deploy, except the front passenger airbag if it is deactivated<sup>1</sup>, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**.

The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side, to cushion their forward movement.

## SIDE AIRBAGS SYSTEM



This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact, limiting the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and the shoulder.  
Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, on the door side.

**Warning**  
**Lateral airbags**

Use only approved seat covers compatible with the deployment of these airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, contact a dealer.  
Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backrests (e.g. clothing) as this could cause injuries to the chest or arm when the airbag is deployed.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary. The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.

A damaged door or any unauthorized or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors - risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags! All work must be carried out only by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Deployment

The lateral airbags are deployed on one side in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**.  
The lateral airbag inflates between the chest of the vehicle's occupant and the corresponding door panel.

## CURTAIN AIRBAGS SYSTEM

System contributing towards greater protection for the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear center passenger) in the

<sup>1</sup> For more information on Deactivating the front passenger airbag, refer to the corresponding section.

event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head. Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

### Deployment

It deploys simultaneously with the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**.

The curtain airbag inflates between the front and rear occupants of the vehicle and the corresponding windows.



### Warning

**Curtain airbags.** Do not fix or attach anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.

Do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, as these help to secure the curtain airbags.

## AIRBAG SYSTEM MALFUNCTION

In the event of a malfunction, the following warning lights illuminate on the instrument panel:



The airbags may not deploy in the event of a serious impact.

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.



### Warning

In the event of a minor impact or bump at the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed.

In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags are deployed.

## FRONT PASSENGER AIRBAG DEACTIVATION

The Front Passenger Airbag must be set in accordance with the type of Child Restraint System used. Follow the Child Restraints Installation Table.

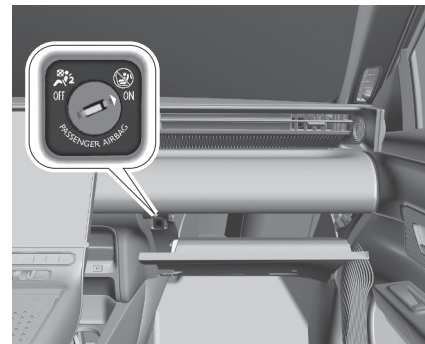
The side airbag and curtain airbag systems, the belt pretensioners and all driver airbag systems will remain active. The front passenger airbag system can be deactivated via a key-operated switch on the passenger side of the dashboard.



### Warning

Deactivate the passenger airbag only in combination with the use of a child restraint system, subject to the instructions and restrictions in the Child Restraints Installation Table.

Otherwise, there is a risk of fatal injury for a person occupying a seat with a deactivated front passenger airbag.



Use the ignition key to choose the position:



**OFF**

front passenger airbag is deactivated and will not inflate in the event of a collision. Control indicator illuminates continuously in the center console



**ON**

front passenger airbag is active

Activate/Deactivate the airbag **only when the vehicle is stopped with the ignition off.**



After the ignition is turned on:

- If the control indicator **ON** illuminates for approx. 60 seconds, the front passenger airbag system will inflate in the event of a collision.
- If the control indicator **OFF** illuminates, the front passenger airbag system is deactivated. It stays on while the airbag is deactivated.

Consult a workshop immediately :

- If neither of the two control indicators are illuminated.
- If both control indicators are illuminated at the same time, there is a system failure. The status of the system cannot be determined. No person is allowed to occupy the front passenger seat.

### Warning label - Front passenger airbag



You must comply with the following instruction, as reminded by the warning label on both sides of the passenger sun visor:



#### **Danger**

**NEVER** use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

**EN:** NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

**DE:** Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.

**FR:** NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT.

**ES:** NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.

**IT:** NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.

## Child Restraints

### GENERAL RECOMMENDATIONS

#### **Warning**

When carrying children in the vehicle, you must install them in a suitable seat. **Never carry a child on your lap.**

#### **Warning**

An incorrectly installed child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident. Make sure to comply with the instructions hereinafter and the ones provided with the child seat.

**i Tip**  
The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 years old or less than 1.5 meters tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their size or weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.
- **Children aged 15 months or less must travel in the "rearward facing" position, whether in the front or rear of the vehicle.** The use of "rearward facing" seats is recommended for children until the age of 3.
- **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.**

**! Warning**  
Do not affix anything on the child restraint systems and do not cover them with any other materials. A child restraint system which has been subjected to stress in an accident must be replaced.

**i Tip**  
**Seatbelts**

Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilize it.

When installing a child seat on a rear seat, ensure that the seat does not interfere with the operation of the seatbelt on the rear center seat.  
Ensure that the seatbelt is properly positioned and tighten it or the child seat harness keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

**! Warning**  
**Headrests**

Remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest or a Top Tether system on a passenger seat.  
Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

**! Warning**  
**Additional protections**

Allow children to enter and exit the vehicle only on the side facing away from the traffic. To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the "Child lock".  
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.  
To protect young children from the sun's rays, fit side blinds on the rear windows.  
As a safety measure, do not leave:

- A child alone and unsupervised inside a vehicle.

- A child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed.
- The keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

### Child Restraint Installation on a Front Seat

**! Warning**  
The front passenger airbag must be deactivated before installing a rearward-facing child seat. Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.



**! Warning**  
The front passenger airbag must be activated when installing a forward-facing child seat.



**i Tip**  
Adjust the front passenger seat to the **highest and fully back longitudinal position, with the backrest straightened.**



### Child Restraint Installation on a Rear Seat

Forward-facing or rearward-facing



- Move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward-facing or rearward-facing child seat itself do not touch the vehicle's front seat.
- Check that the backrest of the forward-facing child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's rear seat, and ideally in contact with it.

### Center rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the center rear passenger seat.

### Seat-specific Recommendations

**Warning**  
**Installing a booster seat**

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.  
Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.

Use a booster seat with a backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

**Warning**  
**Installing a Child Seat with support leg.**

Ensure that the Support Leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.

**Never install a seat with support leg on the center rear passenger seat.**

## SEAT BELT INSTALLATION

Child restraint systems can be fastened by using a seat belt.  
When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the vehicle seat.

## ISOFIX ANCHORAGE CONNECTORS

Specific vehicle ISOFIX child restraint system positions are marked in the Child Restraints Installation Table.

The rear outer seats feature ISOFIX compliant mountings.

These mountings comprise of a set of rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat backrest and cushion.



These rings are located behind zips. The 2 latches on **ISOFIX child seats** are secured to them.

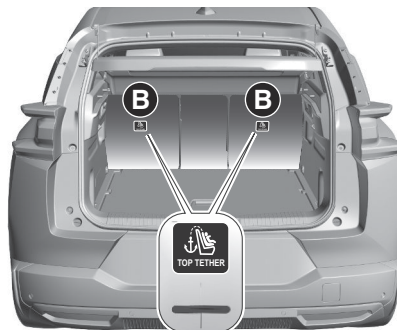
ISOFIX brackets are indicated by a label on the backrest. To get access to the ISOFIX anchorage connectors, first pull the zipper.

**Tip**

When fastening ISOFIX compatible child restraint systems on adjustable passenger seats, first incline the backrest as far as necessary backwards in order to get access to the ISOFIX anchorage connectors. After the proper fastening of the ISOFIX child restraint system, incline the backrest forward again.

**Top-tether anchors**

In addition to the ISOFIX rings **A**, Top-tether seats must be secured to an additional ring **B**, located behind the seat.



Before installing a Top-Tether seat:

- ▶ Remove and stow the head restraint for the seat before installing the child seat.
- ▶ Install the child seat on ISOFIX mountings.
- ▶ Pass the strap of the Child Seat over the back rest and secure it to the Top Tether hook.
- ▶ Tighten the strap according to the instructions of the manual provided with the Child Seat.

ISOFIX child restraint systems of universal category positions are marked in the Child Restraints Installation Table.

**I-SIZE CHILD SEATS**

An i-Size child restraint system is an universal ISOFIX child restraint system according to UN Regulation No. 129.

All i-Size child restraint systems can be used on any vehicle seat suitable for i-Size, as indicated in the Child Restraints Installation Table.

**Tip**

Either a Top-tether strap or a support leg must be used in addition to the ISOFIX brackets to prevent the seat from tipping forwards in the event of a collision.

i-Size child seats and vehicle seats with i-Size approval are marked with i-Size symbol, see illustration.

**CHILD SEATS RECOMMENDED****"RÖMER Baby-Safe PRO"**

**Size: 40 - 85 cm**



**From birth to 15 months**

(up to 13 kg)

Recommended with its ISOFIX base.  
Suitable for "rearward facing" installation only.

**"RÖMER TriFix 2 i-Size"**

**Size: 76 - 105 cm**



### "RÖMER TriFix 2 i-Size"

Size: 76 - 105 cm

From 15 months to 4 years

(from 9 to 22 kg)  
Installed with ISOFIX and  
Top Tether mountings.

Suitable for "forward facing" installation only.

### "RÖMER KidFix i-Size"

Size: 100 - 150 cm



From 3.5 to 12 years

(from 15 to 36 kg)  
Can be installed with or without ISOFIX  
mountings.  
The child is restrained by the seat belt.

**Bought in Stellantis & You,  
Sales and Services**

**We recommend using child seat with the  
backrest. If the backrest is removed for  
child over 138 cm, the secure guard must al-  
so be removed.**



#### Tip

Please follow the child restraint  
manufacturers' instructions for installing the  
appropriate child restraint in the vehicle.



#### Tip

For the semi-universal or vehicle-  
specific child restraint (ISOFIX or belt-type  
child restraint), refer to the list of vehicles  
provided in the child restraint user manual.



#### Tip

Ensure that the installation location of  
the child restraint system inside the vehicle  
is correct.  
Refer to the summary table for the  
installation of child seats.

## CHILD RESTRAINTS INSTALLATION LOCATION



#### Warning

Observe the restrictions and  
indications in the European Regulation Child  
Restraints Installation Table



Seat position where the installation  
of a child seat is forbidden.



Front passenger airbag de-  
activated, and associated  
warning light.



Front passenger airbag ac-  
tivated, and associated  
warning light.



Seat position suitable for the instal-  
lation of a child seat secured us-  
ing the seat belt and universally  
approved "**rearward facing**" and/or  
"**forward facing**" (**U**) for groups **0**,  
**0+**, **1**, **2** or **3** or dedicated to children  
between 40 to 150 cm in size.



Seat position suitable for the instal-  
lation of a child seat secured us-  
ing the seat belt and **universally  
approved "forward facing" (UF)** for  
groups **1**, **2** and **3**, or dedicated to  
children between 76 and 150 cm in  
size only.



Seat position authorized for the in-  
stallation of an **i-Size** child seat.



Seat position not suitable for the  
installation of a child seat with sup-  
port leg.



Presence of a **Top Tether** anchorage  
point at the rear of the backrest, au-  
thorizing the installation of an **uni-  
versal ISOFIX child seat**.



"Rearward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:

- **R1: ISOFIX** child seat for a **baby**.
- **R2: ISOFIX reduced size** child seat.
- **R3: ISOFIX** large size child seat



"Forward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:

- **F2X: ISOFIX** child seat **for toddlers**.
- **F2: ISOFIX reduced height** child seat.
- **F3: ISOFIX full height** child seat.



**Booster** child seat, using seat belt or **ISOFIX** mountings:

- **B2: reduced width booster seat**.
- **B3: full width booster seat**.



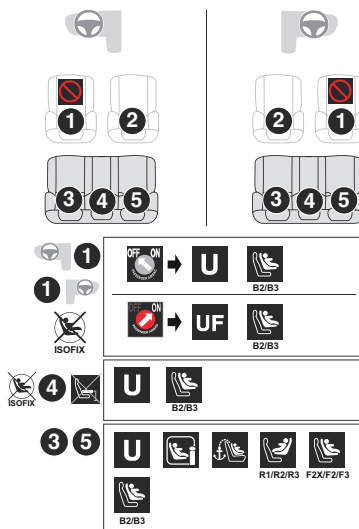
Seat position where the installation of an **ISOFIX** child seat is forbidden.

For seat adjustments, refer to the summary table "**European Regulation Child Restraints Installation Table**".



**ISOFIX** "carrycot" type child seat:

- **L1** : left-hand facing.
- **L2** : right-hand facing.



### European Regulation Child Restraints Installation Table

In compliance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved (a) as well as the largest **ISOFIX** and **i-Size** child seats on seat positions equipped with **ISOFIX** mountings in the vehicle.

Rules :

- A position that is i-Size compatible is also compatible for R1, R2 and F2X, F2, B2.
- A position that is R3 compatible is also compatible for R1 and R2.

- A position that is R2 compatible is also compatible for R1.
- A position that is F3 compatible is also compatible for F2X and F2.
- A position that is B3 compatible is also compatible for B2.

(a) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

(b) Depending on version, refer to the legislation in force in your country before carrying a child at this seat position.

(c) To install a "rearward facing" child seat at this seat position, the front passenger's airbag **MUST** be deactivated "OFF".

(d) Only a "forward facing" child seat is authorized at this seat position with the front passenger's airbag activated "ON".

(e) For a "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing" universal child seat (U) for groups 0, 0+, 1, 2 or 3 or dedicated to children between 40 and 150 cm in size.

(f) For a "forward facing" universal child seat (UF) for groups 1, 2 or 3, or dedicated to children between 76 and 150 cm in size only.

(g) For a seat with height adjustment, set it to the highest position.

(h) Adjust the front passenger seat to the fully rearward longitudinal position.

(i) A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the center rear passenger seat.

(j) Seat not fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings.

(k) If a child restraint system is installed on the center rear passenger seat, the left rear

passenger seat is blocked and **MUST NOT** be occupied.

(l) If a child restraint system is installed on these seats, adjust the head restraint to the maximum height position or remove it if necessary (instability or lack of contact from the rear of the child restraint with the backrest of the seat of the vehicle).

(m) For rear seats with adjustable backrest, set the backrest to an upright position (2nd notch from the most upright position) when using a child restraint system.

(n) Adjust the seat in the front of the seat with the child restraint system to the maximum height.

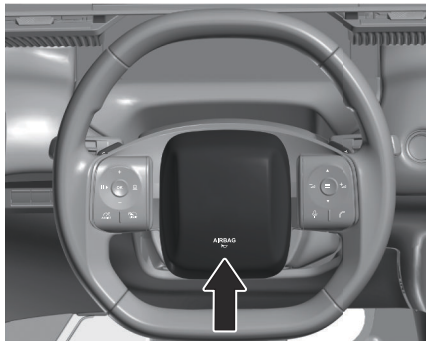
(o) It is not possible to install 3 booster child seats on the rear seats at the same time.

|                                                                                       | Seat numbers        |                       |                    |                              |                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|------------------------------|----------------|
|                                                                                       | Front seats (b) (l) |                       |                    | Rear seats (b) row 2 (l) (m) |                |
|                                                                                       | 1                   | 2 (j)                 |                    | 3                            | 4 (i) (j) 5    |
| Front passenger air-bag                                                               |                     | Deactivated "OFF" (c) | Activated "ON" (d) |                              |                |
| Position compatible with a <b>universal (a)</b> child seat <b>Rearward facing (e)</b> | no                  | yes (g) (h)           | no                 | yes(n)                       | yes (k) yes(n) |
| Position compatible with a <b>universal (a)</b> child seat <b>Forward Facing (f)</b>  | no                  | yes (g) (h)           |                    | yes                          | yes (k) yes    |
| Position compatible with an <b>i-Size</b> child seat <b>Rearward facing</b>           | no                  | no                    |                    | yes                          | no yes         |
| Position compatible with an <b>i-Size</b> child seat <b>Forward Facing</b>            | no                  | no                    |                    | yes                          | no yes         |
| Position equipped with a <b>TOP TETHER</b> hook                                       | no                  | no                    |                    | yes                          | no yes         |
| " <b>Carrycot</b> " type of child seat ( L1 / L2 )                                    | no                  | no                    |                    | no                           | no no          |
| " <b>Rearward facing</b> " ISOFIX child seat ( R1 / R2 / R3 )                         | no                  | no                    |                    | R3 (n)                       | no R3 (n)      |

|                                                            | Seat numbers        |            |                              |           |    |
|------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|------------|------------------------------|-----------|----|
|                                                            | Front seats (b) (l) |            | Rear seats (b) row 2 (l) (m) |           |    |
|                                                            | 1                   | 2 (j)      | 3                            | 4 (i) (j) | 5  |
| "Forward facing"<br>ISOFIX child seat<br>( F2 / F2X / F3 ) | no                  | no         | F3                           | no        | F3 |
| "Booster" child<br>seat ( B2 / B3 ) (o)                    | no                  | B3 (g) (h) | B3                           |           | B3 |
|                                                            |                     |            |                              | B3 (k)    |    |

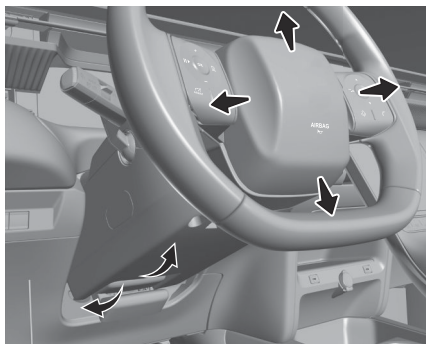
## Steering Wheel

### HORN



- ▶ Press the central part of the steering wheel.

### STEERING WHEEL ADJUSTMENT



- ▶ When stationary, pull the control to release the steering wheel.

- ▶ Adjust the height and reach in a smooth way to suit your driving position and make sure the entire instrument cluster is visible.
- ▶ Push the control to lock the steering wheel.



#### Warning

For safety reasons, these adjustments must only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

### STEERING WHEEL PADDLES

The steering wheel features paddles on either side. Depending on version, they can perform various functions:

- ICE/MHEV/PHEV: Manually change up/down gears.
- BEV: Set Regenerative braking level.

For more information, refer to the corresponding sections.



## STEERING WHEEL HEATING

In cold weather, this function heats the circular part of the steering wheel. It can be activated when the outside temperature is below 20°C.

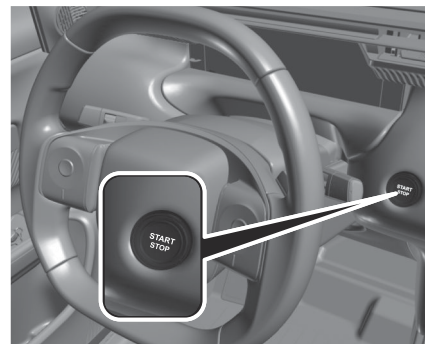


- ▶ In the **Climate** touch screen application, select the **Seats and Steering Wheel** tab.



- ▶ Press to activate/deactivate the function.

## Ignition Switch



- ▶ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▶ Press and hold the "START/STOP" button until the engine starts.

On BEV vehicles, the cluster will display READY when the vehicle is ready to drive.



### Danger

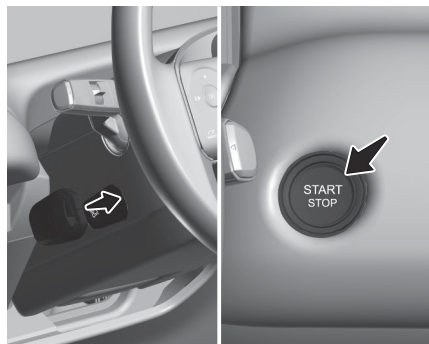
Never switch off the ignition while driving as this will cause steering wheel lock.



### Warning

Only leave the vehicle with propulsion system off, parking brake applied and, depending on transmission, first gear engaged or **P** selected.

## BACKUP STARTING



- ▶ Place and hold the remote control against the back-up reader.
- ▶ Select mode **P**, then depress the brake pedal.
- ▶ Press the Start/Stop button.

## Wipers and Washers



### Tip

Before operating the wipers in wintry conditions, clear any snow, ice or frost from the windshield and around the wiper arms and blades.



### Warning

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. In extremely hot or cold weather, check that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windshield before operating the wipers.



### Tip

After using an automatic car wash, you may temporarily notice abnormal noises and poorer wiping performance. You do not need to replace the wiper blades.

## WINDSHIELD WIPER AND WASHER



### Tip

With the wiper lever in position **AUTO** or **INT**, 1 or 2 and the ignition switched on after more than one minute: When the outside temperature is below +3°C, the windshield wiper activates only at a speed above 6 mph (10 km/h). When the outside temperature is above +3°C, the windshield wiper activates immediately.

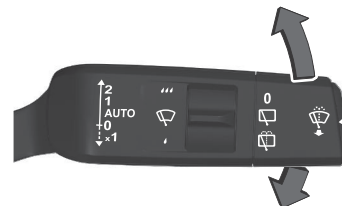


### Tip

In position 1 or 2, the wiping frequency is automatically reduced at a speed below 5

km/h and returns to the original frequency at a speed above 10 km/h.

### Windshield wiper with rain sensor



**2** : fast

**1** : slow

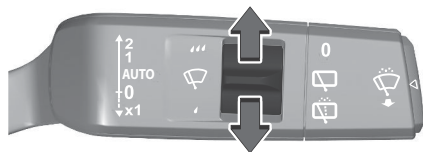
**AUTO** : automatic wiping with rain sensor

**0** : off

**x1** : single wipe

In **AUTO** position, the rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windshield and automatically regulates the frequency of the windshield wiper. If the ignition is switched off, automatic wiping mode is deactivated. Do not use if the windshield is frozen. Switch off in car washes.

### Adjustable sensitivity of the rain sensor



Wiper lever in position **AUTO**.

In **AUTO** position, the rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windshield and automatically regulates the frequency of the windshield wiper.

The sensitivity can be adjusted with the switch on the stalk.

- Push upwards to increase and downwards to decrease sensitivity.

Make sure the sensor is not blocked

### Windshield washer



- Pull the lever.

Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windshield and the wiper wipes a few times.

### REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHER

#### Rear window wiper



0 : off



: intermittent wiping



: screen wash

Do not use if the rear window is frozen or when a bicycle carrier is used. Switch off in car washes. The rear window wiper comes on automatically when the windshield wiper is switched on and reverse gear is engaged.

#### Rear window washer

- Select .

Washer fluid is sprayed onto the rear window and rear view camera and the wiper wipes as long as washing is selected.

## Exterior Lights

### MAIN LIGHTING



#### Warning

Do not look directly into the LED headlights. Risk of eye damage.



Turn the switch:

**AUTO** Automatic light control switches automatically between daytime running light and headlight



Low beam / High beam



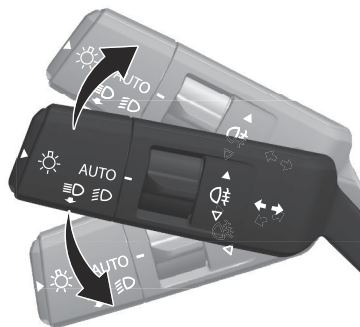
## DAYTIME RUNNING LIGHTS

Daytime running lights increase visibility of the vehicle during daylight.

### Tail Lights

Tail lights are illuminated together with low beam and daytime running lights.

## DIRECTION INDICATORS



► Left or right: lower or raise the lighting control stalk, beyond the point of resistance.

To activate three flashes, tap the indicator lever briefly without passing the resistance point.

## AUTOMATIC LIGHT CONTROL

When the automatic light control function is switched on, the system switches between daytime running lights and low beam automatically depending on the external lighting conditions and information given by the wiper system.

### General Recommendations for Automatic lighting systems.

The automatic lighting systems use a detection camera, located at the top of the windshield.



#### Tip Operating limits

- The system may be disrupted or not work correctly:

- When visibility conditions are poor (e.g. snowfall, heavy rain).
- If the windshield is dirty, misted-up or masked (e.g. sticker) in front of the camera.
- If the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs or safety barrier reflectors.

The system is not able to detect:

- Road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians.
- Vehicles with hidden lighting (e.g. Traveling behind a safety barrier on the motorway).
- Vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.

### **Warning Maintenance.**

Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera.

The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera. In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.

Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could obstruct the camera.

### Automatic Headlight Activation

► Turn the switch in position: **AUTO**

During poor lighting conditions the low beam is switched on.

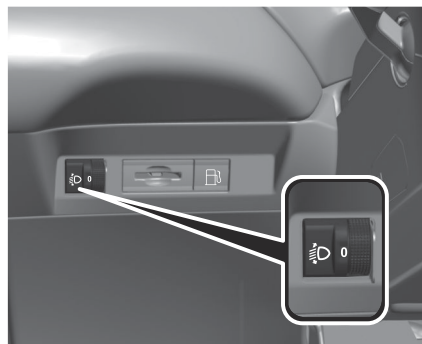
Additionally, headlights are switched on if the windshield wipers have been activated for several wipes.

## HIGH BEAM



- Pull the lever beyond the point of resistance to switch between low beam and high beam.
- Pull the lever up to the resistance point to flash the high beam.

## Headlights range adjustment



To avoid dazzling other road users, the height of the headlight beams must be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

### 0. (Initial setting)

Driver only or driver + front passenger

1. 5 people
2. 5 people + load in the boot
3. Driver only + load in the boot
4. **5, 6** Not used

## AUTOMATIC ADJUSTMENT OF HEADLIGHTS

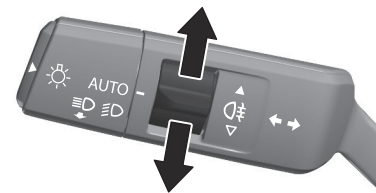
This system automatically adjusts the height of the headlight beams according to different parameters (e.g. vehicle load).



In the event of a malfunction, this warning light illuminates on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

The system places the headlight beams in the lowest position.  
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

## REAR FOG LIGHTS



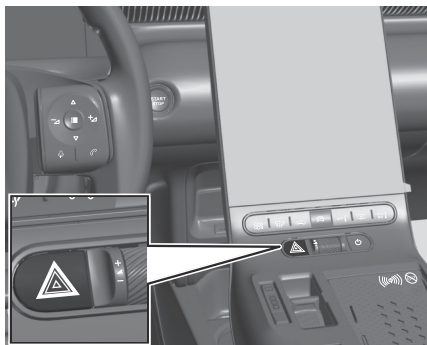
- Push the switch up to switch on the rear fog lights.
- Pull the switch down to switch off the rear fog lights.



### Tip

On MATRIX LED versions, switching on the rear fog lights activates modules on the front lighting that emulate front fog lights.

## HAZARD WARNING LIGHTS



► Press the button to operate.

When braking in an emergency, the hazard warning flashers are switched on automatically, depending on the force of deceleration. When the vehicle starts moving again, the hazard warning flashers must be deactivated manually.

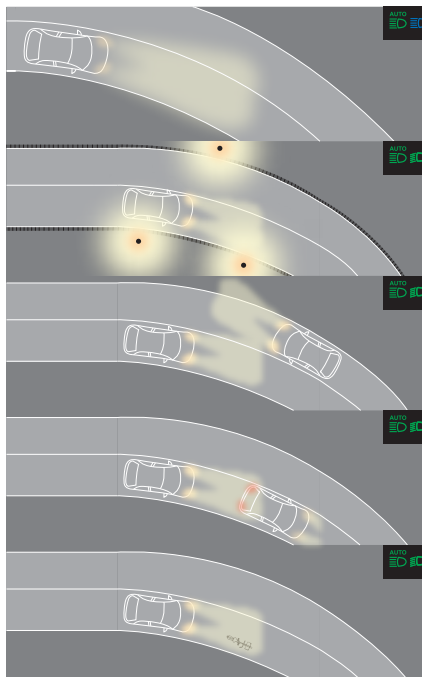
## AUTOMATIC HEADLIGHT DIPPING



### Tip

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations for automatic lighting systems**.

With the ring of the lighting control stalk in the "AUTO" position and the function activated on the touch screen, this system automatically switches between dipped and main beam headlights, according to lighting and traffic conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windshield.



### Warning

This system is a driving aid. The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use in the prevailing light, visibility and traffic conditions, and for compliance with driving and vehicle regulations.



### Tip

The system becomes operational when the vehicle exceeds 16 mph (25 km/h). When the speed falls below 9 mph (15 km/h), the function is no longer operational.

## Activation/Deactivation



It is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

The state of the system is stored when the ignition is switched off.



### Tip

When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function.

## Operation

If the ambient light level is very low and traffic conditions permit:



The main beam headlights come on automatically. These indicator lights illuminate on the instrument panel.

If the ambient light level is sufficient and/or the traffic conditions do not allow the main beam headlights to be lit:



The dipped beam headlights remain lit. These indicator lights illuminate on the instrument panel.

The function is deactivated if the foglights are switched on or if the system detects poor visibility conditions (e.g. fog, heavy rain, snowfall).  
When the foglights are switched off or when the visibility conditions become favorable again, the function is automatically reactivated.



This indicator light goes out when the function is deactivated.

### Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlight beam, the driver can take over at any time.

- Switch the headlights manually between dipped and main beam to pause the function.

If the **"AUTO"** and **"Dipped beam"** indicator lights were on, the system changes to main beam.

If the **"AUTO"** and **"Main beam"** indicator lights were on, the system changes to dipped beam.

- To reactivate the function, once again switch the headlights manually between dipped and main beam.

### Fault

If the situation requires a change of headlight beam, the driver can take over at any time.

- Switch the headlights manually between dipped and main beam to pause the function.

If the **"AUTO"** and **"Dipped beam"** indicator lights were on, the system changes to main beam.

If the **"AUTO"** and **"Main beam"** indicator lights were on, the system changes to dipped beam.

- To reactivate the function, once again switch the headlights manually between dipped and main beam.

## ADAPTATIVE FRONTLIGHT SYSTEM

Available only on versions equipped with MATRIX LED headlights.

This function has several lighting modes, specific to each driving situation.

The intensity and direction of the main headlights and the modules vary so as to increase or reduce the range of the lighting. The modules tilt so as to expand and direct the light beam to increase or decrease the lighting up of the sides of the road.

The function shifts the light beam to the sides of the headlight to ensure better illumination in curves.



### Warning

This function is a driving aid which cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver who must continually adapt the driving of the vehicle to the visibility and traffic conditions.

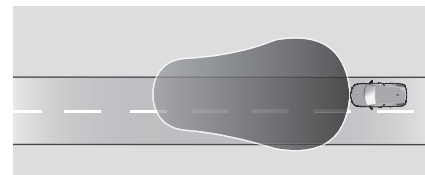
### Activation/Deactivation

- Place the ring of the lighting control stalk in the **"AUTO"** position.



It is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

### Town Light

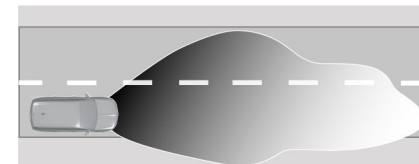


The width of the beam is increased to better distinguish hazards on the side of the road (pedestrians, intersections).

After a few seconds, the function switches to "Town" mode as long as the speed is below 19 mph (30 km/h).

This mode is deactivated after a few seconds above 31 mph (50 km/h).

### Country Light



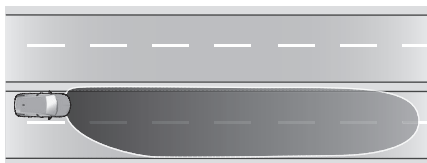
This lighting provides a higher light beam, an increased intensity of the headlights and a decreased intensity of the modules.

This mode is active as long as the rear foglights are switched off and/or the front wipers are activated for less than 2 minutes.

## Fog Mode

This mode is activated if the vehicle is moving at a speed between 0 and 43 mph (70 km/h) and the rear foglights are on. Beyond 43 mph (70 km/h), the function switches to "Motorway" mode even if the rear foglights are activated.

## Motorway Mode

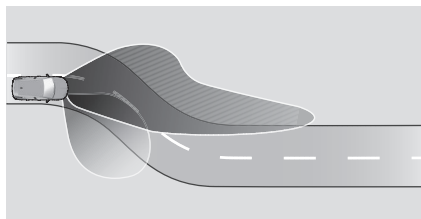


Activated automatically when highway driving is detected. Illumination is adapted to the higher speed driven on motorways and to avoid dazzling drivers in the oncoming lanes. When following vehicles ahead or passing, dazzling for these vehicles is reduced.

## Highway Restriction

The system cannot detect the presence of oncoming vehicles on a roadway separated by a low wall or safety rail. Therefore, the system reduces the light beam on the side of the central separation in order not to dazzle the driver of an oncoming vehicle. In a bend situation, the restriction angle is adjusted according to the curve radius.

## Curve Light



Particular LEDs, based on steering angle and speed, are additionally triggered to improve lighting in curves. This function is activated at speeds up to approx. 70 km/h.

## MATRIXLED HEADLIGHTS

**i Tip**  
For more information, refer to the **General recommendations for automatic lighting systems.**

Available only on versions equipped with Full LED headlights with Matrix Beam function. With the collar of the lighting control in the AUTO position, and the system activated in the Infotainment screen, the system automatically switches between the high and low beam modes, depending on the lighting conditions, and adapts the distribution of the headlights' light depending on traffic conditions using a camera located at the top of the windshield. The MATRIX LED projector is made up of 2 LED modules. The high beam module is made up

of pixel LEDs with individual intensity control. This technology allows to divide the light distribution in horizontal and vertical segments. The high beam light can be full when the driving conditions allow or partial if vehicles are detected (ahead of the vehicle or in the oncoming lane.) The MATRIX LED system allows to illuminate the road as much as possible without dazzling other road users.

**Warning**  
Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor located at the top centre of the windscreen behind the interior rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

**Warning**  
The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use in the prevailing light, visibility and traffic conditions, and for compliance with driving and vehicle regulations.

**i Tip**  
The system is active from 28 mph (45 km/h) and deactivates below 22 mph (35 km/h).

**i Tip**  
When driving in countries with opposite flow of traffic, the automatic lighting functions need to be deactivated as they are biased to optimize lighting for the flow of traffic where the vehicle is sold.

To deactivate the automatic functions :

- Go into Settings/Vehicle/Vehicle Lighting.
- Disable the adaptative lighting function.

### Activation and Deactivation

- Place the outer section of the lighting control stalk in the **"AUTO"** position.



It is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

The state of the system is stored when the ignition is switched off.  
When deactivated, the lighting system changes to "Automatic illumination of lights" mode.



#### Tip

It is recommended that you deactivate the function in foggy or snowy conditions or in case of heavy mist.

The function temporarily is deactivated when the system detects thick fog or when the foglamps are switched on manually. This is signalled by the indicator lamp going off on the instrument panel.

### Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlight beam, the driver can take over at any time.

- Switch the dipped/main beam headlights manually to pause the function.

The lighting system changes to "Automatic illumination of lights" mode.

- To reactivate the function, manually switch the dipped/main beam headlights again.

### Operation

If ambient light is low and the conditions allow, the high beams come on automatically. The highbeams may come on completely e.g if no vehicles are present.

Or partially e.g. if a vehicle is detected. In that case the LEDs will illuminate/be switched off progressively, segment by segment, depending on the driving conditions to maintain maximum illumination of the road without dazzling other road users.



These telltales will illuminate on the cluster

If the ambient light is enough or if the conditions do not permit the illumination of the high beams, the low beams will be maintained.



These telltales will illuminate on the cluster.

Using a camera, the system detects the driving conditions (brightness, lights from oncoming or followed vehicles, road turns) and adapts the beams of the main headlights accordingly. The modules that make up the main beams switch on and off gradually, segment by segment, depending on the driving conditions detected. Nominal main beam lighting is restored as soon as the vehicle is no longer detected by the system.



The system is active but unavailable because the operating conditions are not reached.



When other vehicles approach, only the segments facing the vehicles are switched off to form a "tunnel" around all the vehicles to avoid dazzling the drivers. The other segments stay illuminated.



This tunnel changes shape and position depending on the driving conditions.

### Entering an illuminated area



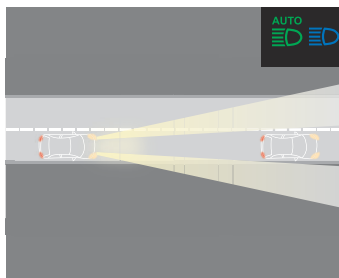
When entering an illuminated area (e.g. city), the segments of the headlights are progressively switched off from the outside in to switch to the low beam headlight mode.

### Exiting an illuminated area



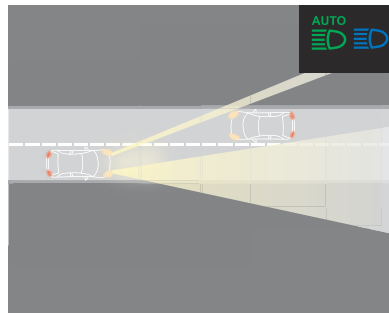
The segments of the headlights are progressively switched on to switch to the high beam headlight mode, with or without "tunnel" depending on the driving conditions.

## Followed vehicle



When approaching a vehicle from behind, only those light segments directed at the followed vehicle go off, thereby creating a "tunnel" so as not to dazzle its driver.

## Oncoming vehicle



When an oncoming vehicle approaches, only those light segments directed at this vehicle go off, thereby creating a "tunnel" during the duration of the approach.

## Traffic Sign Anti Glare

Some traffic signs may be more dazzling to the driver due to the light reflection of LED headlights.

The system can modulate the light intensity sent to traffic signs and thus reduce the light reflection to avoid driver glare.

## Fault in LED Headlight system



Illuminates on the cluster, accompanied by a message that the sensor is masked.

This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop. Stop the vehicle and check if the front camera is covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing. The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.



Illuminates on the cluster, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

A malfunction has occurred with the adaptive headlight lighting or the camera. Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

## GUIDE ME HOME

### Automatic

With the ring of the lighting control stalk in the "AUTO" position and when the light is poor, the dipped beam headlights come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.



It is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

### Manual



- With the ignition off, pull the lighting control stalk toward you ("headlight flash") to activate/ deactivate the function. Manual guide-me-home lighting goes off automatically after a period of time.

## WELCOME LIGHTING

When the vehicle is unlocked in low light conditions and the "Automatic illumination of headlights" function is activated, this system automatically switches on:

- On the outside, sidelights, dipped beam headlights and door mirror spotlights.
- Inside, courtesy lights and footwell lighting.

## DOOR MIRROR SPOTLIGHTS

These spotlights facilitate access to the vehicle by lighting the ground near the front doors. The spotlights come on automatically:

- ▶ when the vehicle is unlocked.
- ▶ when a door is opened.
- ▶ when a request to locate the vehicle is received from the remote control.

They also come on with the welcome lighting and guide-me-home lighting functions. They go off automatically after 30 seconds.

## Interior Lights

### COURTESY LIGHTS



1. Front reading light
2. Front courtesy light

The courtesy light comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked.
- when the ignition is switched off.
- when a door is opened.
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate the vehicle.

It switches off:

- when the vehicle is locked.
- when the ignition is switched on.
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

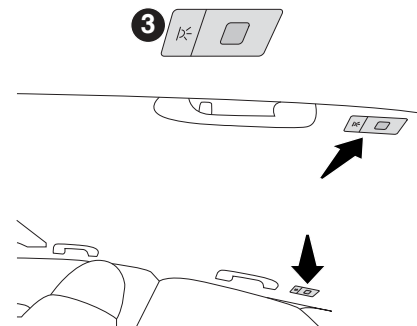
The front and rear touch-sensitive reading lights come on and go off at the same time as the courtesy light.



#### Tip

A long press on the front touch-sensitive courtesy lamp completely deactivates it (confirmed by the "OFF" symbol). The front and rear touch-sensitive reading lamps still remain operational.

## READING LIGHTS



3. Rear push reading lights

## INTERIOR AMBIENT LIGHTING

The interior ambient lighting casts soft, colored lighting in the passenger compartment.



Activation/deactivation and adjustment of the brightness are set via the **Settings > Brightness** touchscreen application.

The color is selected via the **Settings > Customization** touch screen application.



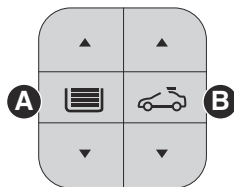
#### Tip

If the color is changed, it is linked to the active driving mode.

## Sunroof

The panoramic sunroof consists of a movable glass panel that slides over the roof and a blind that can be opened independently. Opening the sunroof automatically opens the blind.

- To operate the panoramic sunroof or the blind, use the buttons in the roof console.



- A.** Sunroof blind control
- B.** Sunroof control

The sunroof or blind can be operated by these buttons when the ignition is turned on (if the battery is charged enough), with the engine running, in STOP mode of Stop & Start, and up to 45 seconds after turning off the ignition.

### Precautions



#### Warning

Do not put your head or arms through the sunroof while the vehicle is moving - risk of serious injury!



#### Warning

Do not operate the sunroof if transverse roof bars are fitted - risk of serious damage! Do not place heavy loads on the movable glass panel of the sunroof.



#### Warning

If the sunroof is wet, following a rain shower or washing the vehicle, wait until it is completely dry before operating it. Do not operate the sunroof if it is covered by snow or ice - risk of damage! Use only plastic scrapers to remove snow or ice from the sunroof.



#### Warning

Regularly check the condition of the sunroof seals (e.g. presence of dust, dead leaves). If using a car wash, check first that the roof is correctly closed and keep the high-pressure jet at least 30 centimetres from the seals.



#### Warning

Never leave the vehicle with the sunroof open.

## OPEN OR CLOSE

- ▶ To open the sunroof or the blind, use the part of the button located towards the rear.
- ▶ To close the sunroof or the blind, use the part of the button located towards the front.

## OPERATION OF BUTTONS

- ▶ Pressing a button beyond its point of resistance directly opens or closes the sunroof or blind fully.
- ▶ Pressing the button again stops the current movement.
- ▶ When holding a button (without going beyond the point of resistance), the movement of the sunroof or blind stops when this button is released.
- ▶ When the sunroof is closed: pressing once without passing the point of resistance moves it to a partially open position.

## GENERAL HINTS

### Safety function

If the sunroof encounters resistance during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

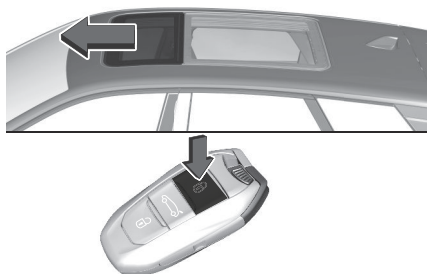
### Override safety function



Press and hold in the event of closing difficulties e.g frost. The sunroof will close with the anti-pinch function disabled. Releasing the button will stop the movement.

### Closing sunroof from outside

The sunroof can be closed remotely from outside the vehicle.



- ▶ Press and hold for more than 2 seconds to close the sunroof. Release the button to stop the movement.

## INITIALIZING THE SUNROOF

If the automatic operation of the sunroof is not possible, the sunroof has to be initialized:



- ▶ Switch on ignition.
- ▶ Press and hold to close the sunroof. When it is completely closed, a short opening and closing motion takes place.
- ▶ Only release one second after this motion has finished.

## Interior Storage - Interior Features

### GLOVE BOX

- ▶ To open the glove box, lift the handle. With the ignition on, the glove box is lit when open.

It houses the front passenger airbag deactivation switch.



#### Warning

Never drive with the glove box open when a passenger is at the front. It may cause injury during sharp deceleration!

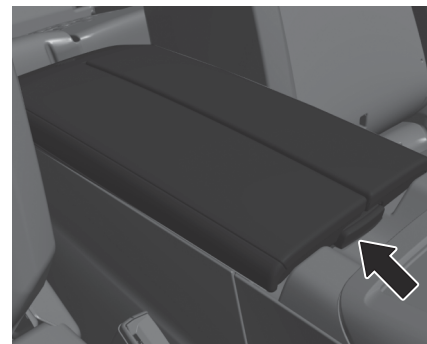
### CUP HOLDERS



The armrest incorporates two cup holders, which are removable. The cup holders have a removable reducer to be used depending on the diameter of the cans and cups.

The pen holder can also hold a smartphone.

## CENTER CONSOLE COMPARTMENT



Slide armrest backwards, push button and fold upwards. Under the armrest there is a storage compartment.

The center console compartment contains an adjustable ventilation nozzle inside, which distributes cooled air.



A storage compartment is located in the center console.

## 12V POWER OUTLETS

Do not exceed the maximum power consumption of 120 W.

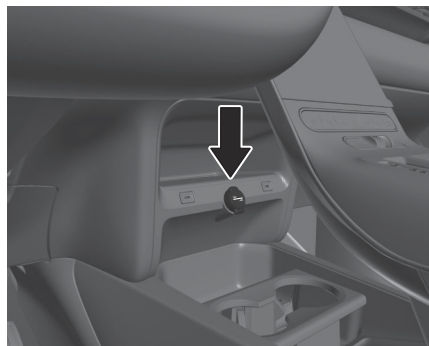
The 12 V power outlet is deactivated in the event of low vehicle battery voltage.

Electrical accessories that are connected must comply with the electromagnetic compatibility requirements laid down in DIN VDE 40 839.

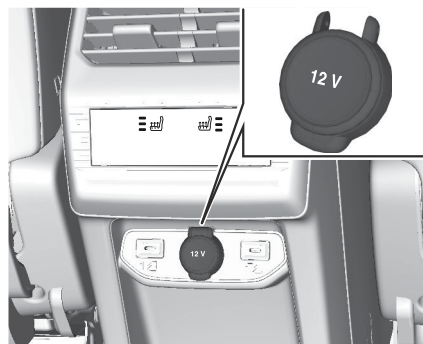
Do not connect any current-delivering accessories, e.g. electrical charging devices or batteries.

Do not damage the outlet by using unsuitable plugs.

### Front Outlet



### Rear Seat Outlet



## USB PORTS

These symbols determine the type of use of a USB socket:



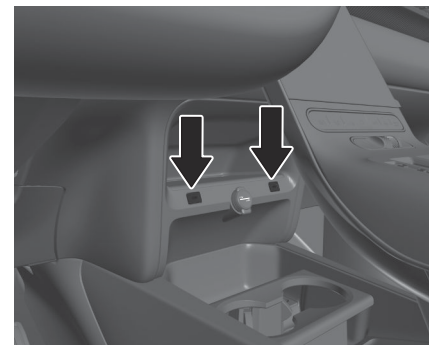
Power supply and recharging.



Likewise, plus exchange of multimedia data with the audio system.



Likewise, plus use of smartphone applications with the touch screen.



USB sockets allow the connection of a portable device.



The left USB socket located at the front of the center console also allows a smartphone to be connected by Android Auto<sup>®</sup> or CarPlay<sup>®</sup>, enabling some smartphone applications to be used on the touch screen.

For best results, use a cable made or approved by the device manufacturer.

The right socket only allows charging. These applications can be managed using the steering-mounted controls or the audio system controls.

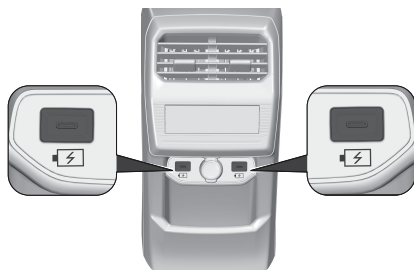


### Tip

When the USB socket is used, the portable device charges automatically.

While charging, a message is displayed if the power drawn by the portable device exceeds the current supplied by the vehicle. For more information about how to use this equipment, refer to the sections describing the audio and telematics systems.

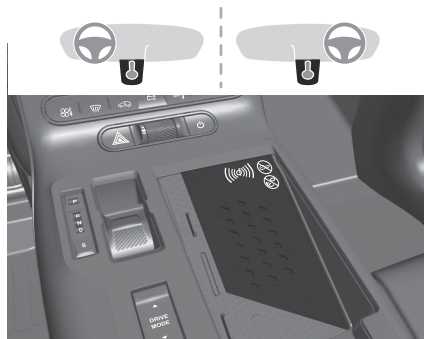
## REAR USB PORTS



Each USB socket is used only to power or recharge a portable device.

**i Tip** While the vehicle is charging, the USB ports cannot be used, as they will not supply power.

## WIRELESS SMARTPHONE CHARGER



(Depending on version)

This system allows wireless charging of a portable device such as a smartphone, using the magnetic induction principle, in accordance with the Qi 1.1 standard.

The portable device to be charged must be compatible with the Qi standard, either by design or by using a compatible holder or shell. A mat can also be used provided that it is approved by the Manufacturer. The charging area is identified by the Qi symbol. The charger works with the engine running and with the Stop & Start system in STOP mode. Charging is managed by the smartphone. With the Keyless Entry and Start system, the charger's operation may be briefly disrupted when a door is opened or the ignition is switched off.

### Charging

- With the charging area clear, place a device in its center.



When the portable device is detected, the charger's indicator light illuminates green. It remains lit for the whole time that the battery is being charged.

**i Tip** The system may not function properly if the smartphone is fitted with a protective shell.

**Warning** The system is not designed to charge multiple devices simultaneously.

**Warning** Do not leave metal objects (e.g.coins, keys, vehicle remote control) in the charging area while a device is being charged - Risk of overheating or interrupting the charging!



**Warning** When using applications for a long time in combination with wireless charging, some smartphones may switch to thermal safety and cause some functions to stop.

### Checking operation

**i Tip** While the vehicle is charging, the wireless charger cannot be used, as it will not supply power.

The state of the indicator light allows the operation of the charger to be monitored.

| State of the indicator light | Meaning                                                                                                             |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Off                          | Engine switched off.<br>No compatible devices detected.<br>Charging complete.                                       |
| Fixed green                  | Compatible portable device detected.<br>Charging.                                                                   |
| Flashing orange              | Foreign object detected in the charging zone.<br>Portable device not well centred in the charging zone.             |
| Fixed orange                 | Malfunction of the portable device's battery meter.<br>Device battery temperature too high.<br>Charger malfunction. |



If the indicator light is fixed orange:

- remove the device, then place it back in the centre of the charging zone.

or

- remove the device and try again after 15 minutes.

If the problem persists, have the system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

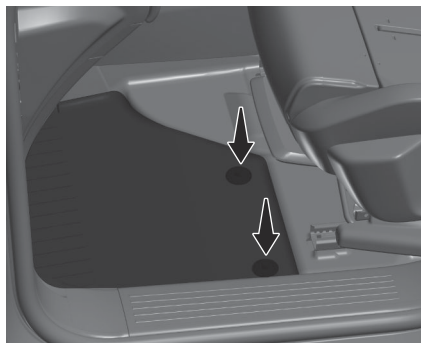
## SUN VISOR

- With the ignition on, raise the concealing flap; the mirror is illuminated automatically.

This sun visor is also equipped with a ticket holder.

## MATS

### Fitting



When fitting it on the driver's side, only use the mountings present on the carpet (a "click" indicates proper locking).

The other mats are simply laid over the carpet.

### Removing/refitting

- To remove it on the driver's side, move the seat backwards and unclip the fasteners.
- To refit it, position the mat and secure it by pressing down.
- Check that the mat is secured correctly.



### Warning

To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- Only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used.
- Never fit one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by the Manufacturer may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/speed limiter.

The approved mats have two fasteners located underneath the seat.

## LOAD COMPARTMENT

### Boot fittings



1. Trunk light
2. 12 V socket
3. Luggage retaining strap

4. Stowing rings
5. Rigid boot floor or hinged boot carpet
6. Storage well

**Tip**

The stowing rings are designed to secure luggage using different types of retaining nets or suitable straps. For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

**Two-level shelf**

(Depending on version)

This 2-position floor allows the boot volume to be optimised using the lateral stops located on the sides:

- High position (**100 kg max.**): to obtain a flat floor up to the front seats, when the rear seats are folded down.
- Low position (**150 kg max.**): maximum boot volume.

**Tip**

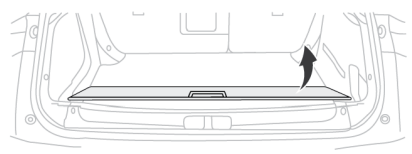
On certain versions, the adjustable boot floor cannot be fitted in the low position.

To change the height:

- ▶ Lift and pull the floor towards you using its central handle, then use the lateral stops to move it.
- ▶ Push the floor all the way forwards to place it in the desired position.

To keep it in the inclined position:

- ▶ From the high position, lift the floor towards the load space cover.
- ▶ Engage it in the inclined position in the lateral stops to secure it in this position.

**Storage well**

- ▶ Lift the trunk floor as far as possible or lift the hinged trunk carpet (depending on version) to access the storage well.

Depending on version, it includes:

- A hazard warning triangle.
- A temporary puncture repair kit with the tool kit.
- A spare wheel with the tool kit.
- The traction battery charging cables (Electric).

To facilitate the use of the emergency equipment, the panel can be hung on grommets on the sides of the trunk walls to keep the tools compartment open.

**Trunk light**

It comes on automatically when the trunk is opened and goes off automatically when the boot is closed.

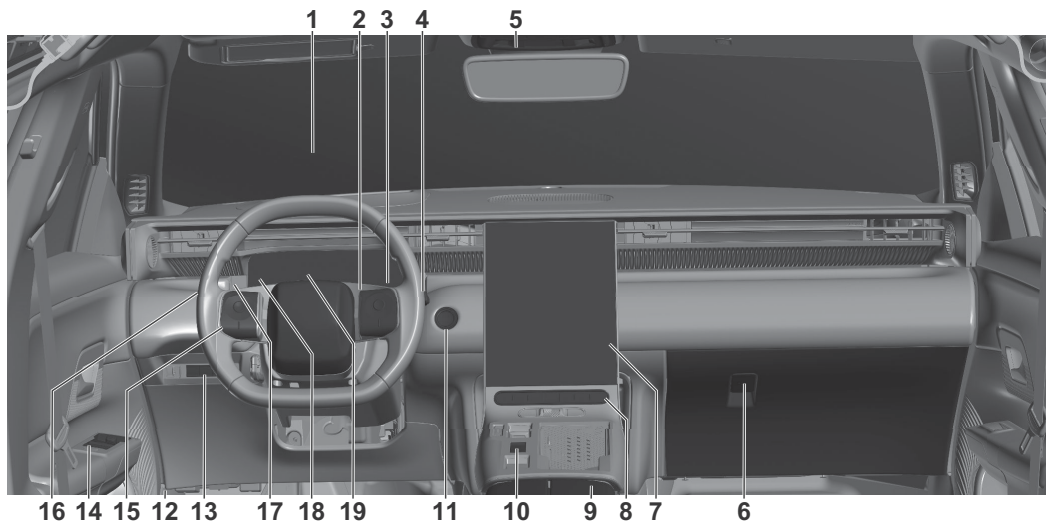
The lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- When the ignition is off, approximately 10 minutes.

- In energy saving mode, approximately 30 seconds.
- With the engine running, unlimited.

## Instrument panel overview

These illustrations and descriptions are provided for information. The presence and location of some elements vary depending on the version or trim level.



- |                                                           |                                         |                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Extended Head Up Display                               | 7. Start/Stop button                    | 13. Side Control Bar                                                            |
| 2. Steering wheel infotainment controls                   | 8. Central controls                     | 14. Mirrors and eHUD adjustment, power windows controls, central locking button |
| 3. Steering wheel right paddle                            | 9. Armrest/ Central Storage compartment | 15. Steering wheel ADAS controls                                                |
| 4. Steering wheel right control stalk                     | 10. Drivetrain controls                 | 16. Steering wheel left control stalk                                           |
| 5. Roof console, sunroof controls, eCall, assistance call | 11. Infotainment display                | 17. Steering wheel left paddle                                                  |
| 6. Glovebox                                               | 12. Hood release lever (pull twice)     | 18. Information cluster                                                         |
|                                                           |                                         | 19. Driver Monitoring camera                                                    |

## Steering Wheel Controls



1. ADAS controls
  2. Lighting control stalk
  3. "-" paddle
  4. Driver monitoring camera
  5. "+" paddle
  6. Wipers and washers control stalk
  7. Infotainment controls
  8. Horn
- A. Increase the set speed
  - B. Start/Pause the speed limiter or cruise control with the stored set speed, confirmation of vehicle relaunch after an automatic stop (adaptive cruise control with Stop&Go function)
  - C. Activation of the speed limiter or the cruise control using the stored set speed, confirmation of the speed suggested by the traffic sign recognition function, overtaking validation
  - D. Display and set the following distance with the preceding vehicle (adaptive cruise control)
  - E. Decrease the set speed
  - F. Selection/deselection of the adaptive cruise control/Drive Assist Plus 2.0
  - G. Selection/deselection of the speed limiter
  - H. Up: Selection of next media/radio/smartphone
  - I. Reduce volume
  - J. Radio : automatic search for the previous/next station  
In a list : validate a selection.  
Outside a list : show list.
  - K. Increase volume
  - L. Down: Selection of previous media/radio/smartphone
  - M. Short press : Vehicle or screen mirroring voice commands (depending on version)  
Long press: Screen mirroring voice commands
  - N. Phone pickup/hanging up, call journal of the Phone app

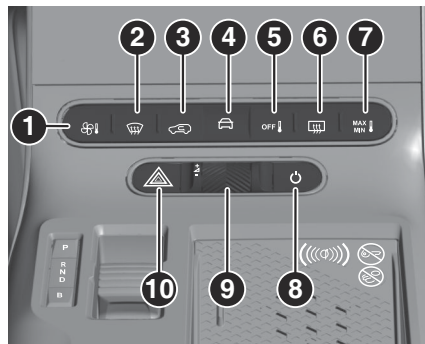
## Side Control Bar

(depending on version)



1. Headlight adjustment.
2. Electric windshield defrost.
3. Boot opening.
4. Fuel flap opening (PHEV).
5. Volumetric alarm disable (Right Hand Drive vehicles only).

## Central Controls



1. Climate control app shortcut.
2. Windshield defrost.
3. Climate control air recirculation.
4. ADAS shortcut.  
Short press: opens ADAS app.  
Long press: deactivates preselected ADAS.
5. Climate control OFF.
6. Rear windshield defrost.
7. Climate control max setting.
8. Infotainment Display Power button.
9. Volume control.
10. Hazard warning lights switch.

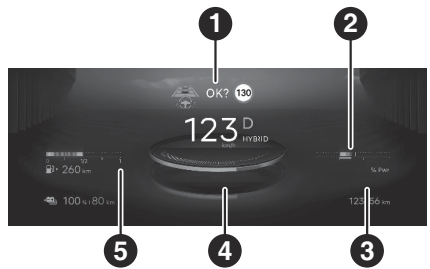
## Instrument cluster

The instrument panel displays all the information the driver needs about the status of the vehicle's various systems. The information displayed on the instrument panel (e.g. warning lights, indicators) may have a fixed or variable location depending on the page or the driving aid activated. For the functions that have indicator lights for both operation and deactivation, there is only one dedicated location.

**i Tip**  
**Display language and units.** These depend on the touch screen settings. When travelling abroad, the speed must be shown in the official units of the country you are driving in (mph, miles or km/h, km).

This information appears in the form of warning and indicator lights and messages. The instrument panel is in the form of a fully digital screen.

1. ADAS (if the function is activated), display of speed limit signs
2. Rev counter (rpm) (ICE)  
Power indicator (MHEV/PHEV/BEV)
3. Total distance recorder (miles or km)
4. Current speed  
Status of the gearbox  
Active driving mode
5. Fuel gauge and remaining range (miles or km) (ICE/MHEV/PHEV)  
Battery charge level and remaining range (PHEV/BEV)



## WIDGETS

The cluster and the eHUD (if equipped) can be customized to display different widgets. The cluster can display:

- Tachometer
- Navigation info
- Trip Computer
- Power Flow
- Speed only
- ...

The eHUD can display, in addition to fixed info such as speed and speed limit sign recognition:

- Navigation info
- ADAS

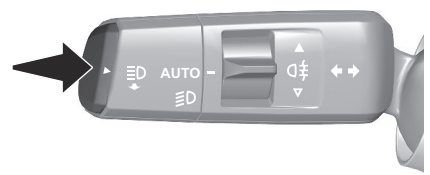
The available settings operations are: addition, deletion and layout of pages and widgets. Each page can contain a widget, displayed on the central portion of the cluster. It is possible to memorize up to 5 pages. Depending on the page displayed, some information is hidden or presented differently.



1. Widget space

## Changing pages

Press the button on the end of the left stalk on the steering wheel to scroll through the pages.



## ODOMETER

The total distance recorder measures the total distance traveled by the vehicle since its initial registration.

With the ignition on, the total distance is displayed at all times. It remains displayed for 30 seconds after switching off the ignition. It is displayed when the driver's door is opened, and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

### Tip

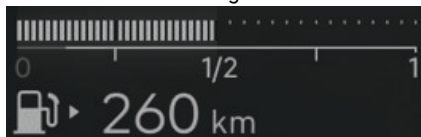
When travelling abroad, you may have to change the distance units (miles or km): the displayed speed must be in the local country's official unit (mph or km/h). The unit is changed via the screen's configuration application, with the vehicle stationary.

### Tip

The total distance recorder is only accessible from the trip computer. For more information on the **Trip computer**, refer to the corresponding section.

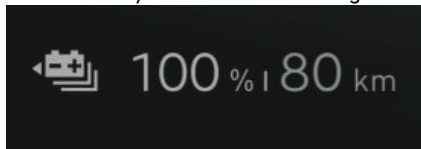
## FUEL LEVEL GAUGE

Displays the remaining fuel level in the tank as well as the estimated range.



## HIGH-VOLTAGE BATTERY CHARGE STATUS

Displays the remaining charge level of the traction battery and the estimated range.



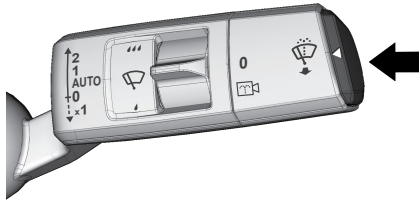
## TRIP COMPUTER

Displays information related to the current trip (e.g. range, average consumption, average speed, distance traveled).



1. Average speed.
2. Average fuel/energy consumption
3. Distance traveled

## Displaying the different tabs



- Pressing the button located on the end of the wiper control stalk displays the following tabs in turn:

Current information:

- Instantaneous energy consumption
- Distance traveled in electric mode

Trips "1" then "2":

- Average consumption
- Average speed.
- Distance traveled.

### Trip reset

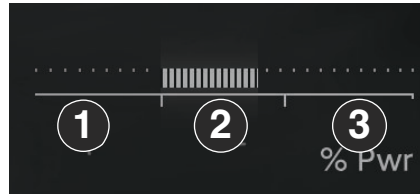


- When the desired trip is displayed, press the button on the end of the wiper control stalk for more than 2 seconds.

Trips "1" and "2" are independent and are used in the same way.

## POWER INDICATOR

The power indicator shows in real time the power demanded from the vehicle. There are 3 zones:



1. **CHARGE**
2. **ECO**
3. **POWER**

**CHARGE** Traction battery charging during deceleration and braking.

**ECO** Moderate energy consumption and optimized driving range.

**POWER** Energy consumption by the drive train during acceleration.

## Warning and indicator lights

### IF A LIGHT REMAINS LIT

If a red or orange warning light comes on, there may be fault which needs further investigation.

### Overview

The numbers in the overview table indicate what to do, when a control indicator illuminates or flashes.

- 1 : only for information
- 2 : information and warning
- 3 : seek the assistance of a workshop
- 4 : stop engine and seek the assistance of a workshop
- 5 : have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop

## LIST OF WARNING AND INDICATOR LIGHTS

### RED WARNING AND INDICATOR LIGHTS

#### Critical braking system fault



Steady.

The brake fluid level in the braking circuit has dropped significantly.

Carry out (1), then top up with fluid that complies with the manufacturer's recommendations. If the problem persists, carry out (2).



Steady.



The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is faulty.

Carry out (1) and then (2).

### Seat belts not fastened/unfastened



Steady or flashing, accompanied by an increasing audio signal. A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened.

### Stop



Steady, associated with another warning light, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.

A serious fault with the engine, braking system, power steering or automatic gearbox or a major electrical fault has been detected (4).

### Traction battery overheating or fault (MHEV, PHEV, BEV)



Steady, combined with the STOP warning light, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal. Steady, combined with the STOP warning light, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.



The traction battery's temperature is too high. Carry out (1).

**Evacuate the vehicle as quickly as possible and move to a safe distance.**

Carry out (2).

### Coolant temperature too high



Steady. The temperature of the cooling system is too high.

Stop the vehicle, then wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the level, if necessary (2). If the problem persists carry out (4).

### Engine oil pressure too low (ICE, MHEV, PHEV)



Steady. There is a fault with the engine lubrication system (5).

### 12 V battery charge failure



Steady.

The 12 V battery or charging circuit is faulty (e.g. worn out battery, dirty terminals, alternator failure, loose or damaged belt).

- Turn off all non-essential electrical systems (e.g. air conditioning, radio, heated seats) to reduce 12 V battery load.

Driving with a failed 12 V charging system can eventually cause the vehicle to shut down. This is valid even for electric vehicles, since the propulsion battery powers the electric motors only.

Depending on the failure circumstance:

- If the indicator illuminates at ignition after a long period vehicle inactivity, the most

possible cause may be the 12 V battery discharged, damaged, or at end of life. For all vehicles except BEV, if the engine does not start, you may attempt a Jump Start.

- If the indicator illuminates during driving, a fault in the 12 V charging system is likely. Depending on the symptoms and proximity to a workshop, safely pull over and stop the vehicle (4). If the electric parking brake becomes inoperative, use the chock to to secure the vehicle, especially on slopes.

In all cases, seek the assistance of a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

### Door(s) open



Steady, associated with a message identifying the access. A door or the trunk is not properly closed (2).

An audio signal supplements the alert if the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h).

### Cable connected (PHEV, BEV)



Steady when the ignition is switched on.

The charging cable is connected to the vehicle's connector. It is not possible to start the vehicle while the charging cable is connected to the vehicle's connector. Disconnect the charging cable and close the flap.

**Electric parking brake**

Steady.  
The electric parking brake is applied (1)



Flashing.  
The electric parking brake application or release is faulty (2). If persisting (3) or (4).

If the electric parking brake does not release:

- ▶ Switch the ignition off to reset control systems.
- ▶ Press and release the brake pedal.
- ▶ Move the automatic gearbox to mode **P** and then back to mode **D**.
- ▶ Press and release the accelerator pedal gently.
- ▶ Attempt to release the electric parking brake again.
- ▶ If the issue persists, contact a qualified workshop or the roadside assistance (4).

If the electric parking brake does not apply:

- ▶ Switch the ignition off to reset control systems.
- ▶ Press and release the brake pedal.
- ▶ Move the automatic gearbox to mode **D** and then to mode **P** again.
- ▶ Attempt to apply the electric parking brake again.
- ▶ If the issue persists, use the chock to secure the vehicle, especially on slopes. Seek the assistance of a workshop to have the cause fixed (3).

**System fault (MHEV, PHEV, BEV)**

Steady.

The system is faulty.  
Carry out (1) and then (2).

**ORANGE WARNING AND INDICATOR LIGHTS****Automatic headlight dipping or MATRIX LED VISION fault**

Steady, accompanied by an audio signal and a message.

A malfunction of the MATRIX LED VISION headlights or of the camera has been detected.  
Carry out (2).

**Rear fog lights**

Steady.

The lights are on.

**Low Traction battery level (PHEV, BEV)**

Low traction battery level (Electric)



Steady, accompanied by an audio signal.

The state of charge of the traction battery is low. View the remaining range. Put the vehicle on charge as soon as possible.

**Braking system fault**

Steady.

A minor fault with the braking system has been detected.  
Drive carefully.  
Carry out (3).

**Anti-lock braking system (ABS) fault**

Steady.

The anti-lock braking system has a fault.  
The vehicle retains conventional braking.  
Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).

**Anti-slip Regulation**

Flashing.

ESC/ASR system regulation is activated in the event of a loss of grip or trajectory.



Steady.

The ESC/ASR system has a fault.

Carry out (3).

### Anti-slip regulation (ASR) deactivated



Steady.

The system is deactivated.

The Traction Control system is reactivated automatically when the vehicle is started, and at speeds above approximately 31 mph (50 km/h).

At speeds below 31 mph (50 km/h), it can be reactivated manually.

### Airbag fault



Steady, associated with the Service warning light and accompanied by the display of a message.



One of the airbags or seat belt pyrotechnic pretensioners is faulty.  
Carry out (3).

### Service



Temporarily on, accompanied by the display of a message (3).

One or more minor faults, for which there is/are no specific warning light(s), have been detected. Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed on the instrument panel.

You may be able to deal with some faults yourself, such as changing the battery in the remote control.

For other faults, such as with the tire underinflation detection system, carry out (3).



Steady, accompanied by the display of a message (3).

One or more major faults, for which there is/are no specific warning indicator(s), have been detected. Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed on the instrument panel, then carry out (3).



Steady, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake fault**".

Automatic release of the electric parking brake is unavailable. Attempt the release procedure as indicated in ➞ page70

If successful, carry out (3), otherwise carry out (4).

### Low fuel level (ICE, MHEV, PHEV)



Steady, with the reserve level shown in red, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.

Fill up the fuel tank as soon as possible.

### Engine self-diagnostics system



Flashing.  
The engine management system has a fault.

There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed.

You **must** carry out (2).

### Stop & Start OFF (ICE, MHEV)



Steady, accompanied by a message.

The Stop & Start system has been deactivated manually.  
The engine will not switch off at the next traffic stop.

Reactivate the system via the touch screen.



Steady

The Stop & Start system has been deactivated automatically.  
The engine will not switch off at the next traffic stop, if the exterior temperature is:

- below 0°C.
- above +35°C.

For more information, refer to the **Starting & Operating** section.



Flashing then steady, accompanied by a message.

Flashing then steady, accompanied by a message.  
The system has a fault.  
Carry out (3).

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System



Steady.

The pressure in one or more tires is too low. Check the pressure of the tires as soon as possible. Reinitialize the detection system after adjusting the pressure.



Under-inflation warning light flashing then steady and Service warning light steady.



The tire pressure monitoring system is faulty. Under-inflation detection is no longer monitored. Check the tire pressures as soon as possible and carry out (3).

## Collision Risk Alert/Active Safety Brake



Flashing.  
The system activates and brakes the vehicle momentarily to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle in front.

For more information, refer to the relevant topic in the ➡ page132



Steady, accompanied by the display of a message.

AEB system has been intentionally deactivated via the touch screen.



Steady, accompanied by a message and an audio signal.

AEB system has a malfunction. Drive carefully, carry out (3).



Steady, accompanied by the display of the message **"Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual"**.

The sensor is masked. Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Clean the front camera.



Steady.  
AEB system has a malfunction requiring service.



If these warning lights both illuminate again after the engine is switched off and restarted, carry out (3).



Steady.  
The system is deactivated temporarily because the driver and/or front passenger (depending on version) has been detected as present but the corresponding seat belt has not been fastened.



## Lane keeping assist



Flashing.

You are about to cross a broken lane marking without operating the direction indicators. The system is activated, then corrects the trajectory if it detects a risk of unintentionally crossing a line or hard shoulder (depending on version). For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.



Steady.

The system has been automatically deactivated or placed on standby.



Steady, accompanied by the display of the message **"Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual"**.

The sensor is masked. Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Clean the front camera.



Steady, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.



The system has a fault. Carry out (3)

### Tortoise mode



Steady.

The state of charge of the traction battery is critical.

The engine power gradually decreases.

You must put the vehicle on charge.

If the warning light remains lit, carry out (2).

### Automatic functions of the electric parking brake (OFF)



Steady

Under normal conditions, the electric parking brake is automatically applied when the engine is switched off, and automatically released upon first use of the accelerator pedal.

The indicator light signals a deactivation, which can be either intentional (2), or due to a possible malfunction (3).

If automatic application or release of the electric parking brake is no longer possible due to a possible malfunction, you may first attempt the following reset procedure (2):

- Start the engine.
- Use the control to apply the electric parking brake.
- Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.
- Hold the control pressed in the release direction for between 10 and 15 seconds.
- Release the control.
- Depress and hold the brake pedal.

- Pull the control in the application direction for 2 seconds.
- Release the control and the brake pedal.

If the automatic parking brake indicator remain illuminated, carry out (3).

### Electric parking brake fault



Steady.  
Electric Parking Brake fault detected (3)

### Parking sensors



Flashing.

The system detects an obstacle.



Steady, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.

The system has a fault.  
Carry out (3).



Steady, accompanied by the display of the message "**Parking Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual**".

The sensor is masked.  
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.  
Clean the front and/or rear sensors.

### Put foot on brake



Steady.

Insufficient or no pressure on the brake pedal.  
With the engine running, before releasing the parking brake, to move out of mode **P** on an automatic gearbox.

### Driver Attention Warning by Camera (Distraction detection)



Steady.

The system is deactivated.



Steady, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.

The system has a fault.  
Carry out (3).



Steady, accompanied by the display of the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual**".

The sensor is masked.  
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.  
Clean the front camera.

## Road signs recognition



Steady, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.

The system has a fault. Carry out (3).



Steady, accompanied by the display of the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual**".

The sensor is masked. Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Clean the front camera.

## Pedestrian horn



Steady.  
Pedestrian horn system has a failure (3).

## GREEN WARNING AND INDICATOR LIGHTS

### Daytime running lights/Sidelights



Steady.

With adequate ambient light, the daytime running lights are on.  
With inadequate ambient light, the sidelights are on.

## Dipped beam headlights



Steady.

The lights are on.

### Automatic headlight dipping or MATRIX LED VISION



Steady.



The function is activated via the touch screen. The lighting control stalk ring is in the "AUTO" position.  
For more information, refer to the **Getting to Know your Vehicle - Exterior Lights** section.

### Direction indicators



Flashing with audio signal.

The direction indicators are on.

### Stop & Start (ICE, MHEV, PHEV)



Steady

When the vehicle stops, the Stop & Start system puts the engine into STOP mode.



Flashing

STOP mode is momentarily unavailable or START mode is automatically triggered.  
For more information, refer to the **Starting & Operating** section.

### Vehicle ready to drive (PHEV, BEV)



Steady, accompanied by an audio signal when it comes on.

The vehicle is ready to drive.  
The indicator light goes out upon reaching a speed of approximately 3 mph (5 km/h) and illuminates again when the vehicle stops moving.  
The light will go out when you switch off the motor and exit the vehicle.

### Hill Assist Descent Control



Steady.

The system is operating.

### Seat occupied/Seat belt fastened



Steady.

With the ignition on, the driver or a passenger has fastened their seat belt.

## BLUE WARNING AND INDICATOR LIGHTS

### Main beam headlights



Steady.

The Main beam headlights are on. With MATRIX BEAM headlights, the system is operating in high beam mode and dynamically shaping the beam.

### e-Save function (PHEV)



Steady, accompanied by the reserved electric range.

The function is activated.

## GREY WARNING AND INDICATOR LIGHTS

### Automatic headlight dipping or MATRIX LED VISION is inactive



Steady.

The system is active, but the conditions for normal operation are not met.

### Seat unoccupied



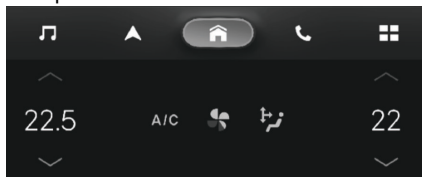
Steady.

The seat is unoccupied.

## Climate Controls

The Climate Control buttons are always available on the permanent dock of the Infotainment Display, as well as in the Climate Control app.

Each side controls the Temperature setting of its respective side in the cabin.



### To increase/decrease the temperature:

- ▶ Tap or slide the finger on the desired side to reach the desired value.

## ACCESSING THE CLIMATE CONTROL APP

- ▶ Press the Climate Control App shortcut on the **Central Controls**.

or

- ▶ Tap between the temperature setting controls on the Infotainment Display.

## ADVICE

### Tip Using the ventilation and air conditioning system

- ▶ To ensure that air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windshield, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor in the boot free from obstructions.
- ▶ Do not cover the rain/light sensor located 3 on the dashboard; this sensor is used to regulate the automatic air conditioning system.
- ▶ Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes once or twice a month to keep it in good working order.
- ▶ If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing a large load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power, enhancing the towing capacity.

### Warning

Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off or with prolonged operation of interior air recirculation. Risk of misting and deterioration of the air quality!

### Restriction

If the interior temperature is very high after the vehicle has stood for a long

time in the sunshine, air the passenger compartment for a few moments. Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

**i Tip**  
Condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water underneath the vehicle. This is perfectly normal.

**i Tip**  
**Servicing the ventilation and air conditioning system**

- Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.

We recommend using a composite passenger compartment filter. Its specific active additive helps protect against polluting gases and bad smells.

- To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, have it checked according to the recommendations in the Manufacturer's service schedule.

## AIR INTAKE

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the exterior, via the grille located at the base of the windshield, or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

## AUTOMATIC AIR CONDITIONING

This automatic mode ensures optimum management of the passenger compartment temperature, air flow and air distribution, based on the selected comfort level.

- Press button **AUTO** to activate the automatic mode of the air conditioning system.

The indicator light in the button illuminates when the air conditioning system is operating automatically.

The intensity of the automatic air conditioning is modulated by choosing one of the following settings:

- **AUTO SOFT:** provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.
  - **AUTO NORMAL:** offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation (default setting).
  - **AUTO FAST:** provides dynamic and efficient air distribution.
- To change the AUTO mode, press button **AUTO** successively.

To ensure passenger comfort in the rear seats, favor settings **AUTO NORMAL** and **AUTO FAST**.

**i Tip**  
In cold weather with the engine cold, the air flow is increased gradually until the comfort setting has been reached, in order to limit the delivery of cold air into the passenger compartment.

On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort setting requested, there is no need to alter the value displayed to more quickly reach the required level of comfort. The system automatically corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

## AUTOMATIC AIR CONDITIONING MANUAL SETTINGS

It is possible to manually adjust one or more of these functions, while the system retains automatic control of the other functions:

- air flow.
- air distribution.

The indicator light in the "**AUTO**" button goes out if a setting is changed.

- Press button **AUTO** again to reactivate automatic air conditioning.

### Adjusting the air flow

- Press one of the **fan buttons** or drag horizontally to increase or decrease air flow. It is also possible to directly press one of the values. (Refers to image on previous page)

**i Tip**  
**Switching off the air conditioning system**

When the air flow is reduced to a minimum, ventilation stops. "**OFF**" is displayed alongside the fan.

## Adjusting the air distribution

- Press the buttons to adjust the air flow distribution inside the passenger compartment.



Windshield and side windows



Central and side air vents



Footwells

A symbol is activated to display the presence of blown air in the direction indicated.

It is possible to activate all three buttons simultaneously, for uniform distribution throughout the passenger compartment.

## Temperature synchronisation

The driver side temperature setting is applied to the passenger side.

- Press button **SYNC** to activate/deactivate the function.

The function is automatically deactivated if the passenger uses their temperature adjustment buttons.

## QUICK LAUNCH FUNCTION

The Quick Launch function utilizes the external temperature sensor to automatically adjust the

climate settings of the vehicle. Based on the detected temperature:

- For temperatures below 64°F (18°C):
    - Air conditioning activated, activates heating features, including heated seats, heated steering wheel.
    - Provides warm airflow and adjusts air distribution.
  - For temperatures above 64°F (18°C):
    - Air conditioning activated, ventilated seats (if equipped), and maximum airflow. Provides cool airflow and adjusts air distribution.
- To activate/deactivate the function, press the **MAX/MIN** button of the **Central Controls**.

## INTERIOR AIR RECIRCULATION

The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windshield and side windows.

Recirculating the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from outside odors and fumes and allows the desired passenger compartment temperature to be achieved more rapidly.



- Press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by the illumination/extinction of the indicator light).



### Tip

This function is activated automatically when the front screenwash is used or reverse gear is engaged.

## Clean Cabin function

(depending on version)

Using exterior and interior pollution sensors, this function automatically activates the recirculation of interior air when a certain level of pollutants in the exterior or interior air is detected.

When the air quality returns to a satisfactory level, recirculation of interior air is automatically deactivated.

This function is not designed to detect unpleasant odors.

Recirculation is automatically activated when the windshield wash is used or when reverse gear is engaged.

The function is inactive if the outside temperature is below 5°C to prevent the risk of misting on the windshield and side windows. The management of the recirculation of interior air makes it possible to return to a purified passenger compartment in just a few minutes, thanks to the passage of air through the high-performance passenger compartment filter. If the air quality appears to be reduced, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to change the high performance passenger compartment filter.

## TEMPERATURE PRE-SETTING

This function allows you to program the temperature in the passenger compartment to reach a pre-defined, non-modifiable temperature (approx. 70 °F [21 °C]) before you

enter the vehicle, on the days and at the times of your choice.  
This function is available when the vehicle is connected or not connected.

### Programming



► In the **Climate** touch screen application, select the **Preconditioning** tab.

- Press + to add a program.
- Select the time of entry into the vehicle and the desired days. Press OK.
- Press ON to activate this programming.

The pre-conditioning sequence begins approximately 45 minutes before the programmed time when the vehicle is plugged (20 minutes when it is not connected) and is maintained for 10 minutes after.



#### Tip

You can set multiple programmes. Each one is saved in the system. To optimise the driving range, we recommend starting a programme while the vehicle is connected.



Programming can also be carried out from a smartphone using the **MyCitroen** application.

For more information on **Remotely operable additional functions**, refer to the corresponding section.



#### Tip

The fan noise that occurs during temperature pre-conditioning is perfectly normal.  
The door mirrors are folded when the temperature pre-conditioning and the ignition are on.



#### Tip

#### Vehicles equipped with an alarm system

Depending on version, interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring may be reduced.

### Operating conditions

- The function is only activated when the **ignition is switched off** and the **vehicle locked**.
- When the vehicle is not connected, the function is only activated if the battery charge level is greater than 30% .
- When the vehicle is not plugged and a recurring program is active (e.g. from Monday to Friday), if two temperature pre-conditioning sequences are run without the vehicle being used, the program will be deactivated.



#### Warning

Do not open the charging flap or hood while preconditioning is ongoing.  
Do not use a power generation unit to start preconditioning.  
Ensure all windows are closed when preconditioning is active.

## SWITCHING OFF THE AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM

- Press button **OFF** on the **Central Controls** bar.

Its indicator light illuminates and all the other indicator lights of the air conditioning system go off.

This action deactivates all of the functions of the air conditioning system.

The temperature is no longer regulated. A slight flow of air can still be felt, due to the forward movement of the vehicle.

## Infotainment Display

This system gives access to the following elements:

- Time and exterior temperature.
- Heating/air conditioning system controls and reminders of settings.
- Settings for driving aid functions, comfort and safety functions, audio equipment and digital instrument panel.
- Display of visual maneuvering aid functions.
- Audio equipment and phone controls with display of associated information.
- Connected services and display of associated information.
- Navigation system controls and display of associated information (depending on equipment).
- Voice recognition (depending on equipment).

**Warning**

**For safety reasons, always stop the vehicle before performing operations that require sustained attention.**

Some functions are not accessible while driving.

**MAIN CONTROLS**

Access to one of the home pages  
Return to the first home page



Access to the **Climate** application



Direct access to the **Shortcuts for ADAS**

- Swipe down from the upper edge of the touch screen to access a list of quick settings (e.g. **Brightness, eHUD toggle, Profile and Privacy settings, etc.**).
- Swipe to the sides to scroll between pages.0



Show/Hide context menu



Return to the previous page

- To change the status of a function, press the description for the corresponding

line (change confirmed by the slider moving to the right/left: function activated/deactivated).



Access additional information on the function



Access to function parameters



Adding/Removing shortcuts



Short press, ignition off: system on/off.  
Short press, ignition on: mute/re-store sound.  
Long press, ignition on: start stand-by mode (mute sound, screens and clock display off).



Volume adjustment.

**APPLICATIONS**

Press this button to access the applications wall.

To obtain information about the other applications not listed here, refer to the sections describing the audio and telematics systems.

**ADAS**

Activation/deactivation and configuration of the driving aid functions.

**CLIMATE**

Settings for temperature, air flow, etc. For more information on **Automatic air conditioning control**, refer to the corresponding section. Activation/deactivation of the heated steering wheel. For more information on the **Heated steering wheel**, refer to the corresponding section.

**SEATS**

Activation/deactivation and configuration of the seat comfort functions (heating, ventilation and massages). For more information on the **Heated and/or ventilated seats** or on the **Multi-point massages**, refer to the corresponding section.

**SETTINGS**

Main settings for the audio system, touch screen and digital instrument panel. Activation/deactivation and configuration of the exterior lighting, vehicle access and safety functions.

## BRIGHTNESS

Used to manually adjust the brightness of the instruments and controls to suit the exterior light level.



It is configured in the **Settings > Brightness** touch screen application

- In the "**Cockpit**" category, press or move the slider to the desired setting.

## PERSONALISING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL

Press the pencil in the "**Customise Driver Information**" part or long press on any widget. The modification of the organisation of the different widget is displayed on the instrument panel in real time.



### Tip

A widget is a reduced window of an application or service.

## ADDING A WIDGET



To add a widget, press "Widget" on the left of the screen.

Or



Press one of these buttons on the screen.

Select the desired widget.



Press the back arrow to return to the previous page.

## DELETING A WIDGET



To move a widget to the bin, press and hold it, then drag it to the bin.

## Head-Up Display



This extended head-up display system projects information onto the windshield in the driver's field of vision so that they do not need to take their eyes off the road.

To activate the Head-Up Display, open the Notification Center by pulling down from the top of the Infotainment Display and pressing the HUD button.



### Warning

No object must be placed in the cavity - risk of damaging the system!



### Tip

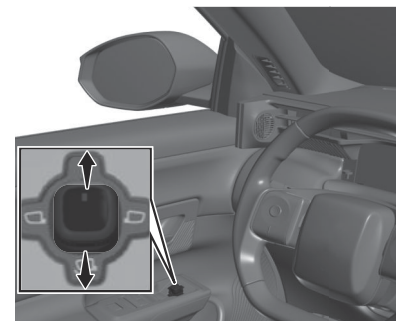
For optimum use, consider adjusting the driver's seat and the height of the extended head-up display. In some extreme weather conditions (e.g. rain and/or snow, bright sunlight) and when wearing polarized sunglasses, the extended head-up display may not be legible or may be momentarily obscured.



### Tip

The EXTENDED HEAD UP DISPLAY is associated with a specific windshield approved by the Manufacturer. If the windshield is replaced outside the dealer network, follow the Manufacturer's recommendations.

## ADJUSTING THE POSITION OF THE HEADS UP DISPLAY



- Turn the control to the forwards position.
- Move the control up or down to adjust the height of the display.

## ADJUSTING THE BRIGHTNESS

To adjust the brightness:

- ▶ Swipe down from the top of the Infotainment Display to access the Notification Center.
- ▶ Press the Brightness button.
- ▶ Set the desired brightness level.

or

- ▶ Go into the Settings/Brightness menu
- ▶ Adjust the brightness as desired



### Tip

The eHUD will automatically dim if low ambient light conditions are detected (e.g. At night). This does not change the overall brightness setting.

## Introduction

### Danger

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

### Warning

For safety reasons and because they require sustained attention by the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on:

- Connecting the smartphone via Bluetooth, USB or Wi-Fi.
- Using the smartphone.
- Connecting to the CarPlay® or Android Auto applications (some applications stop displaying when the vehicle is moving).
- Changing the system settings and configuration.



### Caution Overheating

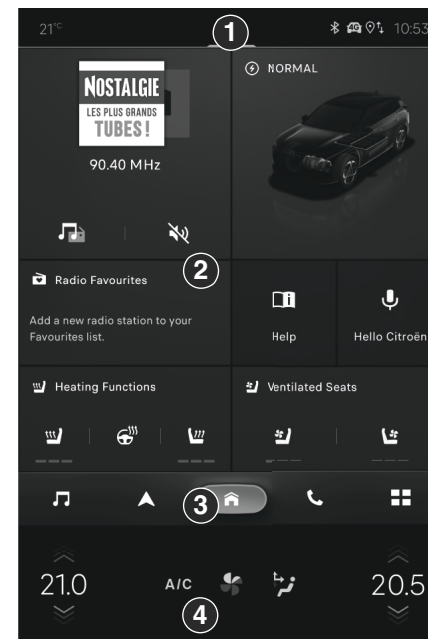
In very hot conditions, operation may be limited to protect the system (e.g. volume may be reduced). A warning message is displayed on the screen. The system will resume normal operation when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.



### Caution

Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touch screen. Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touch screen. Do not use sharp objects on the screen. Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

## MEDIA / RADIO / PHONE INFORMATION



1. Status bar
2. Customizable Area
3. Launchers Area
4. Climate Dock

## MENU

### FIRST STEPS



The system starts when the ignition is switched on.

Short press, ignition off: system on/off.

Short press, ignition on: mute/restore sound.

Long press, ignition on: start standby mode (mute sound, screens and clock display off).

- Increase or decrease the volume using the knob or the "plus" or "minus" buttons.

### Information

This system gives access to the following elements:

- Audio equipment and phone controls with display of associated information.
- Connected services and display of associated information.
- Navigation system controls and display of associated information (depending on equipment).
- Voice recognition (depending on equipment).
- Time and outside temperature.
- Heating/air conditioning system controls and reminders of settings.
- Settings for driving aid functions, comfort and safety functions, extended head-up display (depending on equipment and version), audio equipment and digital instrument panel.
- Display of visual maneuvering aid functions.

### Status bar

Some information is displayed permanently in the upper banner of the touch screen:

- Outside temperature from the vehicle's sensors (associated with a blue symbol if there is a risk of ice).
- Status of the heated/ventilated seats and heated steering wheel.
- Charge level of the connected smartphone.
- System connection status (Bluetooth®, Wi-Fi, mobile phone network).
- Time.
- Quick access to the Mirror Screen® functions (associated with a connected smartphone).

Swipe down from the upper edge of the touch screen to access the notifications center and display a list of quick settings :Guest, Privacy Settings, Brightness, My Devices, night mode, etc.

## PRINCIPLES



- Use this button to display the most recent home page used; a second press displays the first home page, then press the virtual buttons displayed on the touch screen.



- Scroll through the home pages by sliding your finger along the screen to the right or to the left.

### Principle of movement in the system

Depending on the pages displayed on the screen, scroll through the text or the menu (on the left side of the screen) by sliding your finger, as with a smartphone.

### Touch buttons



Display/hide the context menu  
Display/hide the context menu



Return to the previous page.

- To change the status of a function, press the description for the corresponding line (change confirmed by the slider moving to the right/left: function activated/deactivated).



Access to additional information about the function.



Access to a function's settings.



Add/delete shortcuts.

## PROFILES

### Configuring profiles



- Press the "**Settings**" application.

- In the list, select the "Profile" tab.



The "**Driver**" profile is pre-created and displayed by default, you can customize its settings, and reset the profile.

A "**Guest**" profile is also available, but the settings cannot be customized. If desired, multiple individual profiles can also be created to suit each driver's preferences.



Each profile created can be associated with a mobile device of your choice connected via Bluetooth®; the Bluetooth® function of the mobile device must first be activated.

The last profile used will be highlighted.



- Select "**Create Profile**", then follow the procedure.

Creating a new profile allows you to personalize:

- Language, units, Privacy Settings.
- Screen configuration, appearance.

- Audio settings, favorite radio stations.
- Lighting, interior ambiance (refer to the "**Ease of use and comfort**" section).
- Navigation history, favorite points of interest (POIs), navigation settings.
- Some driving aids and the list of favorites.



- To delete a profile, select it from the list of profiles then press the bin.

### Privacy Settings

The "Privacy Settings" management is associated with each profile. This function is used with: a "Guest" and "Driver" profiles, which are pre-configured by default in "Private Mode", or a profile to be created in the system, with or without connection to a mobile device. For each profile (even "Guest"), the last privacy mode saved value will be restored.



### "Share Data and Location"

This mode allows the vehicle to externally transmit all the personal data needed for each valid available connected service.



**Tip**  
The personal data required to use the connected services is sent to the providers of these services.



### "Share Data"

This mode allows the vehicle to externally transmit all the data needed for each valid available connected service, with the exception of vehicle location data (e.g. GPS coordinates).



**Tip**  
Some connected services may not function without the vehicle location data.



**Tip**  
This mode will not be applied to services bent to legal obligations (e.g. eCall (SOS) system and Speed Limit Information function, where applicable), to some connected services essential for the vehicle (e.g. remote updating of software and firmware by 'Over The Air' technology), or to specific connected services for which it is expected to prevent malicious usages from other users (e.g. Connected alarm).



### "Private Mode"

This mode does not allow the vehicle to transmit personal data outside the vehicle.



**Tip**  
Connected services will only perform local processing inside the vehicle with limited functions.

**Tip**

This mode will not be applied to services bent to legal obligations (e.g. eCall (SOS) system and Speed Limit Information function, where applicable), to some connected services essential for the vehicle (e.g. remote updating of software and firmware by 'Over The Air' technology), or to specific connected services for which it is expected to prevent malicious usages from other users (e.g. Connected alarm).

**Tip**

**Professional purposes.** If the vehicle is used for professional purposes or under the terms of specific contracts (e.g. corporate fleet, government assignment), some privacy modes will not be available for the user on the screen, depending on the data sharing needs of the services.

- To change mode, swipe down from the upper edge of the touch screen to display all of the quick settings.



- Press this button and select the chosen mode. The mode is highlighted.

OR



- Press the "**Settings**" application.

- In the list, select the "**Connectivity**" tab.



- Select "**Privacy Settings**".



- Choose the mode.

## UPDATING THE SYSTEM

**Tip**

### Remote devices management and update

Software and firmware management and updating are done remotely with the "Over the Air" technology. The "Over the Air" technology updates the vehicle through a secure connection to the Manufacturer's server (mobile or Wi-Fi).

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the connection configuration must be set to "Connected vehicle" to enable the connection to the mobile network.

The software and firmware are managed and updated to comply with a legal Manufacturer requirement or when the user's safety is at risk, independently of any service subscription.

The secure connection set up through a mobile network and the related remote updates are not affected by the privacy settings. The user receives a notification and must initialise then carry out the updates.

### Downloading the update

The system can notify when an update is received if it is connected to a Wi-Fi or a mobile network.

If an update is available, a pop-up window appears on the screen after a travel.

The user is redirected to a Wi-Fi connection page to go further with the update.

Large updates are downloaded with a Wi-Fi network only.

If the vehicle is already connected to Wi-Fi and user has selected "Automatic downloading of updates" during his configuration, an authorization pop-up window appears.

A checkbox allows you to change the authorization for automatic downloading of updates with a Wi-Fi network.

The user can install the update immediately or postpone it.

A pop-up window will give an estimate of the maximum duration and a description of the update.

Update information is available through the "Settings" application.

- Press the "**Settings**" application.

In the list, select the "**Updates**" tab.

An update installation pop-up window shows at the end of a travel. If the pop-up window is closed, the update can be installed through the update center menu.

[Software Update Name]

An update is ready to be installed.

The Installation process requires the immobilization of the vehicle. The estimated duration is [UpdateDuration] minutes.

Please install when you are ready.

INSTALL NOW

REMIND ME ON NEXT

### Installing the update

Installation time can take from some minutes to a maximum of 2h30.

The user can leave the vehicle when the installation is launched.

The update description contains some information:

- the update severity,
- the update purpose,
- the "Systems Impacted" (group of Electronic Control Units involved).

Some software can be updated in some systems in one update. It can lead to some degrees of severity and purposes for the same system.

The update description tells if it impacts the user manual. Upgrades of the user manual are highlighted in the Online user manual.

The update history is available through the MyCitroen mobile application or online on the Citroen website.



### Warning

For safety reasons and because it requires sustained attention of the driver, the installation must be carried out at ignition off.  
The installation cannot be carried out in one of the following cases:

- engine is on
- ignition is on
- vehicle is not parked with the parked mode
- vehicle is parked in a steep slope
- windows are open
- vehicle is deadlocked
- turn-indicators or hazard-warning lights are on
- headlights are on
- vehicle has a trailer
- Internal conditions, such as internal temperatures, to protect the vehicle are not met
- another update is in progress
- a tool is plugged in the OBD Port\*
- Emergency Call is in progress
- internal conditions to protect the car are not met
- batteries charge level is not sufficient\*\*

\* If you must plug a tool into the OBD port and cannot accept the installation, try to unplug it and switch the vehicle on and off, then try again to launch the update. After the update, you can plug your device again in the OBD Port.

\*\*If the installation is not available, try to relaunch it after a few trips

### Features unavailable

The vehicle and its features cannot operate during the update. It will not be possible to start, move or deadlock the vehicle.

Only the access with the controller and the alarm features are available. The access and alarm features can be unavailable for some minutes if the Access and Vehicle Supervision systems are impacted by the update. If the vehicle is charging, the charge will be paused during the installation process. Please note that the charging programming setting can be lost. The charge can restart immediately after the installation.

Disclaimer If an update has failed or has expired, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

The Manufacturer does not charge for the use of this service.

The use of Wi-Fi and/or mobile networks by your phone can incur extra charges if you exceed the data allowance included in your contract.

Any associated costs will be billed to you by your mobile phone operator.

### CUSTOMIZATION



- Press and hold the screen from one of the system's home pages.

Or



- ▶ Press the "**Settings**" application.

- ▶ In the list, select the "**Customization**" tab. Press the "**Displays**" field.

A page divided into 2 parts is displayed. Press the HOME button at any time to leave this page.

### Personalizing the screen

- ▶ Press "**Customize Touchscreen**".

A representation of the organization of the different home page (**HOME**) Widgets is displayed.



#### Tip

A Widget is a reduced window of an application or service.

### Adding a Widget



- ▶ To add a Widget, press "**Widget**" on the left of the screen.

Or



- ▶ Press one of these buttons on the screen.

Select the desired Widget.



- ▶ Press the back arrow to return to the previous page.

### Organizing the Widgets on a home page (**HOME**)

- ▶ To move a Widget, press and hold it, then drag it to the desired location.

### Adding a page



- ▶ To add a page, press "**Page**" on the left of the screen.



- ▶ Press the back arrow to return to the previous page.

### Deleting a Widget



- ▶ To move a Widget to the bin, press and hold it, then drag it to the bin.

## Multimedia System

### GPS NAVIGATION - APPLICATIONS - MULTIMEDIA AUDIO SYSTEM - BLUETOOTH® PHONE



#### Tip

The functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of the vehicle, and according to the country of sale.



#### Warning

For safety reasons and because they require continued attention from the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on:

- Pairing the smartphone with the system via Bluetooth®.
- Using the smartphone.
- Connecting to Mirror Screen (Apple® CarPlay® or Android Auto).
- Changing the system settings and configuration.



#### Tip

The message **Energy economy mode** is displayed when the system is about to go into standby.

For more information on **Energy economy mode**, refer to the "**Practical information**" section.



#### Warning

Navigation is a driving aid. It cannot replace the driver. All guidance instructions should be carefully checked by the user. By using the navigation, you accept the following terms and conditions: [https://www.tomtom.com/en\\_gb/legal/eula-automotive/?388448](https://www.tomtom.com/en_gb/legal/eula-automotive/?388448)



#### Tip

The OSS (Open Source Software) source codes for the systems are available at the following link : <https://www.citroen.com/open-source>

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Steering-wheel Controls

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you can use different controls on your steering wheel to interact with the touch screen system in different ways.



#### Voice control:

Short press, system voice commands or smartphone (depending on equipment).  
Long press, voice commands of the smartphone connected using Bluetooth® or Mirror Screen® (Apple® CarPlay® /Android Auto) via the system.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.

Mute the sound: long press on the decrease volume button.  
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.



**Incoming call** (short press): accept the call.

**Call in progress** (short press): hang up.  
**Incoming call** (long press): refuse the incoming call.  
**Out of call** (short press): access the call log of the phone connected via Bluetooth®.

**Mirror Screen® connected** (short press): access the projected view of the phone application of your Mirror Screen® equipment.



**Radio:** automatic search for the previous/next station (in the list of radio stations sorted by name or by frequencies).

**Media:** previous/next track, movement in the lists.

**Phone:** browse the phone's call log.

**Short press:** validate a selection. Out of selection, display the lists.

## APPLICATIONS

### Appwall



From the home page, press this button to access the applications wall.

### Help



Watch tutorials.

### Radio/Media



Select an audio source or radio station.

### Mirror Screen®



Smartphone connected with Mirror Screen® : access to the projected view of Apple® CarPlay® or Android Auto.

Smartphone not connected: access the menu allowing you to connect a smartphone.

### Navigation

(depending on equipment)



Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.

Use services available in real time, depending on equipment.

### Phone



Phone not connected: access the menu allowing you to connect a phone.

Phone connected: access the call log, contacts and phone settings.

Two connected phones: access the contents of the priority phone with the possibility of changing the priority of the phone.

### Settings



Main settings for the audio system, touch screen and digital instrument panel.

## VOICE COMMANDS

### First steps

#### (depending on equipment)

The voice recognition service offers a choice of 20 languages minimum (French, German, English (UK), English (US), Arabic, Brazilian, Chinese, Danish, Spanish, Hebrew, Italian, Japanese, Dutch, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Swedish, Czech, Turkish) available with the cellular network and in line with the language chosen and previously configured in the system.

The system supports two languages for cases where the area in which the vehicle is traveling is not covered by the cellular network.

These languages, referred to as on-board languages, are downloaded into the system. If the chosen language is not downloaded, a message on the screen appears as soon as the cellular network is not connected for the first time and offers to download it.

To use this new language in all areas, download it beforehand (ignition on without starting the engine) via the Wi-Fi network.

Apply the download procedure displayed on the screen.

Downloading this new language removes the least used on-board language.

#### Information - Using the system



When voice commands are activated, say your command after the audible signal.

For commands in several stages, interaction takes place with the system to complete the initial request.

Some commands self-validate after 7 seconds. If the system has not taken your command into account, it will indicate this by a voice message and an on-screen display.



► Press the "**Settings**" application.

In the list, select the "**Voice Assistant**" tab.



Activate/Deactivate:

- "**Listen for (Hello Citroen)**": to invoke the voice recognition using the keyword "**Hello Citroen**".
- "**Data Usage**": to authorize our supplier to re-use your data in order to let him globally improve its capabilities in term of voice recognition and voice assistance.
- "**Vocal Barge-In**": to allow user to speak over spoken dialog prompts and be recognized.



**Tip Voice Assistant/Data Usage.** Vehicle's location and voice recordings are not concerned; only textual transcriptions of your conversations with the voice assistant are kept after to be pseudonymised.

#### Opening voice recognition



Voice commands can be used on any screen page, provided there are no other sources which take

priority in use (reverse, emergency or assistance call, phone call, other smartphone voice recognition already launched).

Choice of opening voice recognition:

► Say "**Hello Citroen**".

or

► Press the button located on the steering wheel.

or

► Press the touch screen button.



#### Warning Caution

To ensure that voice commands are always recognized by the system, please follow these recommendations:

- **Use natural language in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.**
- After opening voice recognition with the steering wheel-mounted button or the button on the touch screen, always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before talking.

No "beep" sounds when voice recognition is opened using "**OK Iris**".

- For optimal operation, it is recommended that you close the windows and the sunroof (depending on equipment) to avoid any external interference, and switch the ventilation off.

- Before speaking the voice commands, ask the other passengers not to speak.



Voice command example for air conditioning:

**"Raise the fan speed"**

**"Turn on air conditioning"**

**"I'm too hot"**



Voice command example for radio and media:

**"I want to listen to Michael Jackson"**

**"Switch to radio"**

**"Tune to 88.5"**



#### Tip

Media voice commands are only available with an USB connection.



Voice command example for navigation:

**"Navigate home"**

**"Navigate me to Gabrielle's house"**

**"Search for public parking nearby"**



#### Tip

Depending on the country, give destination (address) instructions in the language configured for the system.



Voice command example for phone:

**"Call Matthew's mobile"**

**"Call 0113 345 9869"**

**"Call Jonathan"**



#### Tip

If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth®, a pop-up window appears: **"Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®"**, and the voice session will be closed.



Voice command example for the weather:

**"Do i need a raincoat"**

**"How is the weather tonight"**

**"What is today's humidity level"**

### ChatGPT

Chat GPT is part of the Connected Services and if the user subscribes to it, it will enable an extended range of functions. To activate ChatGPT, you can use the same voice command **"Hello Citroen"**.

## NAVIGATION

### Navigation home screen

(depending on equipment)

### Access to additional videos



<https://www.tomtom.com/stellantis-connected-nav>



Press the **" Navigation "** application to display the navigation home screen.



Press **" Search "** to enter an address or a name.



Press this button to display the 3D/2D mode or to display cardinal directions (N, E, S, W).



Select "**Sound activated**", "**Alerts only**" and "**Silent**" with successive presses on this button.



Press the "plus"/"minus" buttons to zoom in/out, or use two fingers on the screen.

### Main menu



Press the "**Navigation**" application to display the navigation home screen.



Press this button to display the main menu for the various options.



Select "**Search**" to enter an address, name or some points of interest.



Select "**Go home**" using an address previously saved in "**Add home**".



Select "**Go to work**" using an address previously saved in "**My places**".



Select "**Recent destinations**" to display the latest destinations searched.



Select "**Current trip**" on the Route Overview page to open another menu and perform various actions for the current planned route.



Select "**My places**" for quick access to saved places as well as favorite destinations.



Select "**Parking**" to display the various parking options in the area.



Select "**Charging station**" to display the different charge stations on the current route or near the current location.



Select "**TomTom service**" to check the network status.



Select "**Settings**" to enter the vehicle type and to personalize the display, voice instructions, map options, trip planning, sounds and alerts, and system information.



Select this button to display details on software versions as well as legal information. Details of the Open Source software libraries used and their license URLs.



### Tip

Regular connection to a secure Wi-Fi access point automatically updates the installed mapping globally. The mapping is also updated using a cellular network, depending on version, country of

sale, the vehicle's level of equipment, as well as the subscription to connected services and options.

However, using your smartphone's Wi-Fi and/or cellular networks may incur additional charges if you exceed your data plan. These charges, if any, will be passed on to your telephone operator's bill.

### Navigation settings

Open the **Navigation settings** page.

On the **Map & Display** page, the **Range visualization**, which shows the remaining range on the map can be enabled/disabled.

On the **Planning & Travel** page, the desired level of charge when arriving at a charger and the desired state of charge when arriving at a destination can be set.

On the **Vehicle Setting** page, the charging station's socket can be selected, depending on the cable present onboard.

### EV Routing



### Tip

EV routing can function without a subscription to Connect PLUS, but it will not receive updates on the status of charging stations.

The navigation system incorporates several features designed to guide drivers through efficient and worry-free journeys. The system will adapt the routing of journeys to minimize travel duration, maximize EV efficiency and vehicle range and provide real-time information on charging points to help drivers find somewhere to charge along their journey.

The system will try to find the optimum route, preferring the most powerful charging stations to reduce the number of stops, and trying to maximize driving speed. If the journey cannot be completed with the current level of charge, the EV navigation will automatically add charging stops.

EV navigation shows the details of the charging station, the estimated time of arrival at the station, the estimated charge time, and the estimated time of arrival at the final destination.

The EV navigation system will automatically adapt if the conditions change (availability, detour) and continuously update the route to keep the next charging stop within range, and notifies the driver in case of recalculation. At the end of a trip, the distance, trip duration, average energy consumption and remaining range will be displayed.

### Selecting a different charging station



If you wish to choose another charging station, press **Add stop**, go to the Charging station icon and select the desired charging station.

**Tip**  
Manually added charging stations are not included in the system's charging calculations. However, once the vehicle is charged and the engine restarts, the route will automatically recalculate and update.

### Customizing battery management

EV Routing provides two ways to manage battery economy: through **Route Options** for one-time adjustments and Settings (**Options > Planning & Travel**) for default preferences.

To set a one-time battery level for your destination (Route Options):

- ▶ Open the **Route Options** menu.
- ▶ Select the desired battery level upon arrival at your destination.

The system will automatically calculate charging stops and the charge percentage needed at each stop.

**Tip**  
This change applies only to the current trip and does not modify default settings.

To set a minimum battery level for all trips (**Options > Planning & Travel**):

- ▶ Go to **Settings > Options > Planning & Travel** in the navigation system.
- ▶ Set the minimum state of charge for both charging stops and destination arrival.

These settings will be used for all future trips unless manually changed.

### Battery Preconditioning

To enable the preconditioning, the following conditions need to be met:

- Navigation is active
- Destination is set

## CONNECTIVITY

### Connecting a wired device by USB

The USB connection of a mobile device allows it to be recharged. It makes its authorized media content available to the system (Media content of iPod® type).



Only one USB socket will allow a Mirror Screen connection (Apple® CarPlay® or Android Auto) for the compatible connected mobile devices and to use some of the device's applications on the touch screen.

For more information on the USB socket compatible with the Mirror Screen® function, refer to the "**Interior Features**" section. The mobile device is in charging mode when connected with the USB cable.

**Tip**  
It is recommended that you use your device's original USB cables, preferably with a short cable to ensure optimum performance.

**Caution**  
To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

### Bluetooth® connection

Connecting a mobile device to the vehicle's system via Bluetooth® provides access to its contents and its "Media" streaming. It also enables the Phone function to be activated. The connection can be initiated either from the mobile device's Bluetooth® menu or from the vehicle's system, which requires opening the "**My Devices**" menu for the first connection.

**Tip**  
In some cases, you will need to unlock your device and check the authorisation to synchronise contacts and recent calls.

Some features may not be supported by your device.  
For information on the partial or full compatibility of device models or smartphones, please connect to the Brand's national website.

### Pairing procedure from a device



- From the Bluetooth® menu on your mobile device, select the system's name from the list of detected devices.



#### Tip

In order to make your system's Bluetooth® visible, first open the "**My Devices**" menu on the system.

Continue the first connection procedure proposed by the system and on the device.  
For example: validating pairing codes.

### Pairing procedure from the system



- Press the "**Settings**" application.

- In the list, select the "**Connectivity**" tab.



- Select "**My Devices**".



- Select the name of the mobile device that you want to connect, from:

- The list of known devices (if the device has already been connected to the system).
- or
- The list of detected devices (if the device was never connected to the system or previously deleted from the system).



#### Tip

A mobile device already connected to the system will be able to reconnect automatically when the vehicle is started, once the user profile has been selected. Automatic reconnection is put on hold as soon as the "**My Devices**" menu is opened. This is to allow the system to make its Bluetooth® visible for the connection of a new device.  
The system is disconnected when the driver's door is opened and the ignition is switched off.

### Automatic reconnection

The system allows automatic reconnection of devices already connected and detected when a user profile is selected.  
The priority reconnected devices are those which have been linked to the selected user profile or, failing this, the last connected devices.

### Wi-Fi connection

The system has an external Wi-Fi connection mode for performing system updates.



- Press the "**Settings**" application.



- In the list, select the "**Connectivity**" tab.

- Select "**Wi-Fi**".



- Activate/Deactivate "**Wi-Fi**".

The system starts a search for nearby Wi-Fi networks. This may take a few seconds. Select the Wi-Fi network to connect to and enter its password.



#### Warning

To protect your system, only networks with a sufficient level of security are allowed to connect. WPA2 encryption level, equivalent to a domestic level, is required.



#### Tip

Any network already connected to the system will reconnect automatically as soon as it is detected by the system and after having previously activated the Wi-Fi function.



#### Tip

The Wi-Fi connection of the system to a device already connected using a Mirror Screen® wireless connection is not possible. In this case, favour a Mirror Screen® connection using the USB socket.

## Device management

For each device already connected to the system using a wireless connection (Bluetooth® or wireless Mirror Screen® connection), it is possible to determine a preferred connection mode (depending on the functions the device can support). It is therefore possible to determine whether the device should be connected using a wireless Bluetooth® connection or a wireless Mirror Screen® connection each time the system is started once the profile is chosen.



► Press the "**Settings**" application.

► In the list, select the "**Connectivity**".



► Select "**My Devices**" to display the list of paired devices.



► Press this button to manage the connection of a device.

► Choose a connection type then confirm this choice by pressing "**APPLY**".

## Deleting a device



► Press the "**Settings**" application.

► In the list, select the "**Connectivity**".



► Select "**My Devices**" to display the list of paired devices.



► Press this button.

► Press "**DELETE**".

► Confirm by pressing "**YES**".



### Caution

Some devices that were just deleted from the system request a connection, refuse this request.

## SCREEN MIRRORING



### Tip

When a smartphone is connected using Mirror Screen®, the vehicle's location and some vehicle data is sent to the smartphone (e.g. brand, left-hand or right-hand drive, day/night mode, physical speed).

## Apple®CarPlay® smartphone connection

Connecting just one Apple®CarPlay® smartphone can be carried out either by USB cable or using a wireless connection.



### Tip

First activate the Siri® function on your Apple® smartphone.

If the device fails to connect, refer to the Apple website to check that the device is compatible with this function. If the problem persists, delete all saved connections on the smartphone and on the system before attempting a new connection.

The cable connection requires that you deactivate the CarPlay function in the **Settings, Bluetooth** menu of your smartphone. In the **Bluetooth** menu, click on the "i" next to the relevant vehicle and deactivate CarPlay.



Connect the smartphone to the system using the USB socket compatible with Mirror Screen.

Apple®CarPlay® is automatically launched a few seconds after the USB connection has been established. In some cases, it may be necessary to unlock your device.

The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

The cable connection allows you to avoid disconnections, especially when passing through toll booths.



### Tip

Only one USB socket enables the Mirror Screen® connection (Apple® CarPlay®); refer to the "**Interior fittings**" section. It is recommended that you use the device's original USB cables, preferably with a short cable to ensure optimum performance.

The wireless connection of an Apple®CarPlay® smartphone can be initiated from the "**My Devices**" menu.

- First activate the smartphone's CarPlay<sup>®</sup> function. In the **Bluetooth** menu, click on the "i" next to the relevant vehicle and activate CarPlay.



- Press the "**Settings**" application.

- In the list, select the "**Connectivity**".



- Select "**My Devices**" to display the device to be connected to Apple<sup>®</sup> CarPlay<sup>®</sup>. If the device has already been connected to the system via Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>, select the device settings from the list of known devices and choose Apple<sup>®</sup> CarPlay<sup>®</sup> as the wireless connection mode. If the device was never been connected to the system before, it will have to be paired (refer to the "Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> connection" section).

The system detects if the smartphone is compatible with Apple<sup>®</sup> CarPlay<sup>®</sup> and offers to connect to it following the pairing process. Subsequent automatic connection of the smartphone requires activation of the Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> on your device.



- As soon as the connection is established, press this button to display the "**Apple<sup>®</sup> CarPlay<sup>®</sup>**" interface.



- To initiate the smartphone voice commands, press and hold the steering-mounted control button.
- Or press the steering-mounted control button for a short time (depending on version).

### Android Auto smartphone connection

Connecting just one Android Auto smartphone can be carried out either by USB cable or using a wireless connection.



#### Tip

First install the "**Android Auto**" application via "Play Store" on your smartphone.

The "**Android Auto**" function requires a compatible smartphone.

If the device fails to connect, refer to the Android Auto website to check that the device is compatible with this function. If the problem persists, delete all saved connections on the smartphone and on the system before attempting a new connection.

To ensure an optimum wireless connection, we recommend avoiding placing your smartphone too close to other Wi-Fi networks to which it can connect automatically.

The cable connection requires that you deactivate the Android Auto wireless function,

in the **Settings** menu of the "**Android Auto**" application of your smartphone.



- Connect the smartphone to the system using the USB socket compatible with Mirror Screen<sup>®</sup>.

Android Auto is automatically launched a few seconds after the USB connection has been established. A validation procedure on the smartphone has to be followed for the first connection, with the vehicle stationary. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

The cable connection allows you to avoid disconnections, especially when passing through toll booths.

The wireless connection of an Android Auto smartphone can be initiated from the "**My Devices**" menu.

First activate the smartphone's Android Auto<sup>®</sup> wireless function, in the Settings menu of the "**Android Auto**" application of your smartphone.



- Press the "**Settings**" application.

- In the list, select the "**Connectivity**" tab.



- Select "**My Devices**" to display the device to be connected to Android Auto.

If the device has never been connected to the system before, it will have to be paired (refer to the "Bluetooth® connection" section).

The system detects if the smartphone is compatible with Android Auto and offers to connect to it following the pairing process. If the device has already been connected to the system via Bluetooth®, select the device settings from the list of known devices and choose Android Auto as the wireless connection mode.

The subsequent automatic connection of the smartphone requires activation of Bluetooth® on your device.



- ▶ As soon as the connection is established, press this button to display the "**Android Auto**" interface.



- ▶ To initiate the smartphone voice commands, press and hold the steering-mounted control button.
- ▶ Or press the steering-mounted control button for a short time (depending on version).

## MEDIA

### Changing source



- ▶ Press the "**Media**" application.



- ▶ Press this button to change source (radio, audio streaming

via a USB socket, Bluetooth® or Mirror Screen®).

### Selecting a radio station



- ▶ Press the "**Media**" application.

In the list, select the "Player"



tab.

- ▶ Press one of the buttons to perform an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



- ▶ Frequencies up or down.

Or



- ▶ this button.



- ▶ Enter the frequency values using the virtual keypad.



- ▶ Press this button to confirm.

- ▶ A list of stations is available by pressing the "**Stations**" tab.



- ▶ Press "**Mute**" to deactivate the sound.



### Caution

Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a charger with USB socket connected to the 12 V socket. The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and does not indicate any malfunction of the system.

### Storing a radio station

- ▶ Select a station.



- ▶ Press the "**Media**" application.

- ▶ In the list, select the "**Player**" tab.



- ▶ Press the "**Radio Favorites**" button.



- ▶ Storing takes place via a long press on one of these buttons, or a long press on an existing favorite radio station, which will be replaced.
- ▶ Or by clicking on the heart button next to the station in the **Stations** tab.



- ▶ Press this button to return to the previous page.

### Automatic search for radio stations

Via the **"Media"** application.



- ▶ Press the **"Media"** application.

- ▶ In the list, select the **"Stations"** tab.

The search is carried out automatically.



- ▶ Using the steering-mounted controls, press and hold this button.

The search is carried out automatically.

### Activating radio station tracking

The system changes frequency automatically to obtain better reception.



- ▶ Press the **"Media"** application.

- ▶ In the list, select the **"Settings"** tab.



- ▶ Activate **"Radio Station Tracking"**.

Highlighting of the slider confirms that the function is activated.

### Changing the waveband



- ▶ Press the **"Media"** application.

- ▶ In the list, select the **"Player"** tab.



- ▶ Press this button to change the waveband (FM - AM - DAB) according to the country of sale.

### Activating traffic announcements

This function gives priority to listening to **Traffic announcements** alert messages. To be active, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current radio station is automatically interrupted so that the message can be heard. Normal radio listening resumes as soon as the message is finished.



- ▶ Press the **"Media"** application.

- ▶ In the list, select the **"Settings"** tab.



- ▶ Activate **"Traffic Announcement (TA)"**.

The lighting of the slider confirms that the function is activated.

### Audio streaming

The streaming function allows you to listen to the audio stream coming from the smartphone(s) connected via Bluetooth®, USB (iPod® type) or Mirror Screen®. First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the system. If playback does not start, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone. Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.



#### Tip

Once connected in streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

### Playing a track

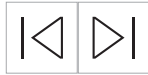


- ▶ Press the **"Media"** application.



- ▶ If several devices are connected, press this button to select one.

Once the device is connected, browsing through the files is possible by pressing the "**Playlist**" or "**Library**" button.



Short press: go to the previous/next track.  
Long press: fast-forward/rewind in a track.



Repeat the current title or the list of selected titles.



Random track playback.



Sound deactivation/reactivation

### Configuring audio and radio settings

Audio settings can be accessed in 2 different ways.

Via the **Media** application



► Press the "**Media**" application.

► In the list, select the "**Settings**" tab.

Or  
Via the Settings application



► Press the "**Settings**" application.

In the list, select the "**Audio and Radio**" tab.  
It is possible to configure:

- Sound Settings.
- Radio Settings.
- Volume Settings.

### Information and advice

The system supports USB Mass Storage devices or Apple® devices via the USB sockets.

The adapter cable is not supplied.

Devices are managed using the audio system controls.

The system will only play audio files with ".wma", ".aac", ".flac", ".ogg", ".mp3" file extensions, at bit rates between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.

No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read. ".wma" files must be of the WMA 9 standard.

The supported sampling rates are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.

To avoid reading and display problems, we recommend choosing file names less than 20 characters long that do not contain any special characters (e.g. " ? . ; ù).

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).



#### Tip

We recommend using the original USB cable for the portable device.

- briefly press the phone button on the steering-mounted controls to accept an incoming call.

Or



► Press this touch screen button.

Ending the call:



► press and hold...



► the phone button on the steering-mounted controls to refuse the call.

Or



► Press this touch screen button.



► Press this button on the touch screen to send an automatic message indicating that you are driving.

### Making a call



#### Warning

Using the telephone is strongly discouraged while driving.  
Park the vehicle.

## PHONE

### Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a display overlaid on the screen.

Accepting the call:

## Making a call using the numeric keypad



- ▶ Press the "**Phone**" application.

In the list, select the "**Keypad**" tab then dial the number.



- ▶ Press this button to make the call

## Making a call using the list of recent calls



- ▶ Press the "**Phone**" application.

- ▶ In the list, select the "**Calls**" tab.

Or



- ▶ Briefly press on the steering-mounted controls.

- ▶ Select and call one of the most recent numbers called in the list.

### Tip

It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

## Calling a contact



- ▶ Press the "**Phone**" application.

- ▶ In the list, select the "**Contacts**" tab.

- ▶ Select the desired contact in the displayed list.



- ▶ Call the contact by selecting one of the contact's phone numbers.

## Organizing the contact list



- ▶ Press the "**Phone**" application.

- ▶ In the list, select the "**Settings**" tab to display the phone-related settings.



- ▶ Choose to list the contacts starting with their first or last name.

## SETTINGS

### Configuring the screen display



- ▶ Press the "**Settings**" application.

- ▶ In the list, select the "**Customization**" tab.

It is possible to configure:

- the screen colors associated with the interior ambient lighting. Refer to the "**Ease of use and comfort**" section.
- the sound ambiance.
- the visual welcome and goodbye animations.
- the screen transition animations.

### Managing the system connectivity



- ▶ Press the "**Settings**" application.

- ▶ In the list, select the "**Connectivity**" tab.

It is possible to manage:

- The Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> connection.
- The Mirror Screen<sup>®</sup> smartphone connections (Apple<sup>®</sup> CarPlay<sup>®</sup>/Android Auto).
- The Wi-Fi connection.
- The privacy mode.

### Configuring the system



- ▶ Press the "**Settings**" application.

- ▶ In the list, select the "**System**" tab.

It is possible to configure:

- the language.
- the date & time.
- the unit of distance and consumption (kWh/100 miles - miles, mi/kWh - miles, km/kWh - km).

- the temperature unit (Fahrenheit, Celsius). It is also possible to reset the system configuration.

### Selecting the language



- Select "**Language**" to change the language.



- Press the desired language.



- Press the back arrow to return to the previous page.

### Setting the date and time

Select "Date and Time" to modify the date and



time.

- "**Automatic Date and Time**" is activated by default, so that the setting is made automatically according to your geolocation.

To adjust manually, deactivate "Automatic Date and Time". Press the "Select Time Zone" field then define a time zone.



- Press the back arrow to return to the previous page.

- Press the "**Time Settings**" line then set the time.



- Press "**OK**" to confirm.

- Press the "**Date**" line then set the date.



- Press "**OK**" to confirm.



- Select the Time Format (12h/24h).



- Select the Date Format.



#### Tip

The system does not automatically change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

### Help



- Press the "**Help**" application.

In the list, select the "**Tutorials**" tab to watch explanatory videos for a quick start on screen management, some driving aids and voice recognition.

## 3rd Party Apps

### REMOTELY OPERABLE ADDITIONAL FUNCTIONS (PHEV, BEV)

(Depending on country of sale)



The following functions are available from the **MyCitroen App** application, which is accessible from a smartphone:

- Managing the traction battery charging (deferred charging).
- Managing the temperature pre-conditioning.
- Viewing the state of charge and range of the vehicle.

### Installation procedure

- Download the **MyCitroen App** application from the appropriate online store for your smartphone.
- Create an account.
- Enter the vehicle identification number (available on the vehicle registration certificate).

For more information on **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.



#### Tip

**Network coverage.** In order to be able to use the various remotely operable features, ensure that your vehicle is located in an area covered by the mobile network. A lack of network coverage may prevent communication with the vehicle (for example, if it is in an underground car park).

In such cases, the application will display a message indicating that the connection with the vehicle could not be established.

## CONNECT ONE



### Tip

This service is included for 10 years from the date at which the warranty starts, and is automatically activated when you install and activate Connect PLUS.

## CONNECT PLUS



### Tip

This service is included for 12 months from the date at which the warranty starts. Activating Connect PLUS will automatically activate Connect ONE.

After the creation of your account via **MyCitroen App**, the installation of Connect PLUS is necessary to access the connected services.

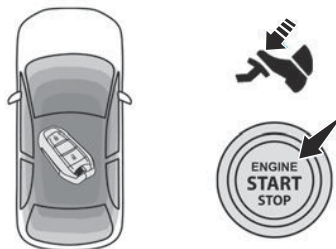
Connect PLUS provides CONNECTED NAVIGATION, which includes traffic information and map updates, as well as Voice recognition.

After the included 12 months subscription period, you will need to visit the Citroen Connected Services store to renew your Connect PLUS pack services.

# Starting and Stopping The Engine

**i Tip**  
The electronic key must be present in the passenger compartment. The electronic key is also detected in the boot.  
If the electronic key is not detected, a message is displayed.  
Move the electronic key so that the engine can be started or switched off.  
If there is still a problem, refer to the "**Key not detected - Back-up starting or Back-up switch-off**" section.

## STARTING



- ▶ Select mode **P** or **N** on the automatic gearbox, then depress the brake pedal.

- ▶ Press the "**START/STOP**" button while maintaining pressure on the pedal until the engine starts.

In all circumstances, if one of the starting conditions is not met, a message is displayed. In some circumstances, a message indicates that it is necessary to turn the steering wheel while pressing the "**START/STOP**" button to assist unlocking of the steering column.

**i Tip**  
**Petrol engines.** After a cold start, pre-heating the catalytic converter can cause noticeable engine vibrations, for anything up to 2 minutes (accelerated idle speed).

### **i Tip** Hybrid engines

The vehicle always starts with the petrol engine to ensure the efficiency of the catalytic converter and the availability of the brake assist.  
After a few moments, the petrol engine may stop if the operating conditions allow (state of charge of the traction battery, external temperature, torque demand, selected driving mode).

### PHEV vehicles

- ▶ Fully depress the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button for approximately 2 seconds.
- ▶ Keep the foot on the pedal until the **READY** indicator light comes on, indicating the activation of the rechargeable hybrid system (confirmed by an audible signal).



### Warning

To exit **Park** mode, wait for the **READY** indicator lamp to come on.

By default, the system starts in **Electric** mode. Depending on certain parameters (battery charge level or outside temperature), the system determines whether it is necessary to start the petrol engine.

It is possible to change the driving mode at any time using the mode selector.

### BEV vehicles

The drive selector must be in mode **P**.

- ▶ Fully depress the brake pedal and briefly press the **START/STOP** button.
- ▶ Keep the foot on the brake pedal until the **READY** indicator light comes on and an audible signal is emitted, indicating that the vehicle is ready to drive.
- ▶ With the foot on the brake, select the mode **D** or **R**.
- ▶ Release the brake pedal, then accelerate.

On starting, the instrument panel illuminates and the power indicator cursor moves to the "neutral" position. The steering column automatically unlocks (you may hear a sound and feel the steering wheel move).

## SWITCHING OFF

- ▶ Immobilize the vehicle using the parking brake.
- ▶ Select mode **P** on the automatic gearbox.
- ▶ Press the **START/STOP** button.

- For PHEV vehicles, before leaving the vehicle, check that the **READY** indicator light is switched off.

The automatic gearbox locks in mode **P**.

**Tip**  
If the vehicle is not stationary, the engine will not stop.

**Warning**  
With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off - risk of loss of control of the vehicle!

**Warning**  
Never leave your vehicle with the electronic key still inside.

## BEV vehicles

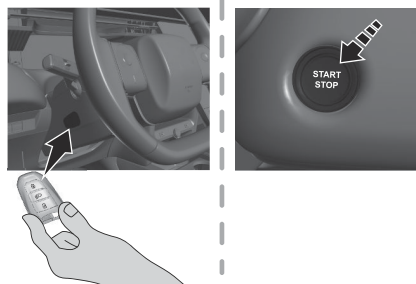
- Press the **START/STOP** button.

Before exiting the vehicle, check that:

- The drive selector is in mode **P**.
- The **READY** indicator light is off.

**Tip**  
If the driver's door is opened while the required conditions for stopping are not satisfied, an audible signal is emitted, accompanied by the display of a warning message.

## SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION WITHOUT STARTING THE ENGINE



With the electronic key in the passenger compartment, pressing the "**START/STOP**" button, **without depressing any of the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on without starting the engine.

- Press this button again to switch off the ignition and allow the vehicle to be locked.

## STOP & START AUTOMATIC FUNCTION

The Stop & Start function puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during phases when the vehicle is stationary (e.g. red lights, traffic jams). The engine automatically restarts - START mode - as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again. Primarily designed for urban use, the function is intended to reduce fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

The function does not affect the functionalities of the vehicle, in particular the braking.

## Deactivation/Reactivation

By default, the function is activated when the ignition is switched on.



It is configured in the **ADAS** touch screen application.

or  
Direct access to the **Shortcuts for driving aids**. The display of a message on the instrument panel confirms the change of state. If the function is deactivated while the engine is in STOP mode, it will restart immediately.

## Associated indicator lights



Function activated: engine on standby (STOP mode)

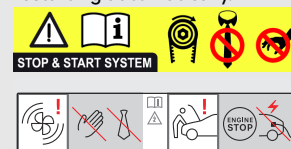


Function deactivated or malfunction

## Warning

### Opening the bonnet

Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury caused by the engine restarting automatically.



**Warning****Driving on flooded roads**

Before entering into a flooded area, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.

For more information on **Driving recommendations**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

**Operation****Main conditions for operation**

- The driver's door must be closed.
- The driver's seat belt must be fastened.
- The level of charge in the battery must be sufficient.
- The temperature of the engine must be within its nominal operating range.
- The outside temperature must be between 0°C and 35°C.

**Putting the engine into standby (STOP mode)**

The engine automatically enters standby mode as soon as the driver indicates their intention to stop:

- ▶ With the gear selector set to mode **D** or with the button **M** pressed, when the brake pedal is depressed until the vehicle stops.
- ▶ With the gear selector set to mode **N**, with the vehicle stationary.

**Time counter**

A time counter adds up the time spent in standby during the journey. It is reset to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

**Special cases**

The engine will not go into standby if the conditions for operation are not met and in the following cases:

- Steep slope (ascending or descending).
- Sport mode selected (depending on equipment).
- Needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.
- Demisting active.



In these cases, this indicator light flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

**Tip**

After the engine has restarted, STOP mode is not available until the vehicle has reached a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h).

**Tip**

During parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear or turning the steering wheel.

**Restarting the engine (START mode)**

The engine automatically restarts as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again:

**With an automatic gearbox:**

- With the selector in mode **D** or **M**: when the brake pedal is released.
- With the selector in mode **N** and the brake pedal released: when the mode **D** or **M** is selected.

- With the selector in mode **P** and the brake pedal depressed: when the mode **R**, **N**, **D** or **M** is selected.
- When the reverse gear is engaged.

**Special cases**

The engine will restart automatically if the conditions for operation are met again and in the following cases:

- Deselecting the Sport mode (depending on equipment).
- Automatic gearbox in mode **N**, vehicle speed exceeds 0.6 mph (1 km/h).



In these cases, this indicator light flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

**Faults**

In the event of a fault with the system, this warning light flashes for a few moments on the instrument panel, then remains on, accompanied by the display of a message.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

**The vehicle stalls in STOP mode**

All of the instrument panel warning lights come on if there is a fault.

- ▶ Switch off the ignition then start the engine again with the **START/STOP** button.

**Warning****12V battery**

The Stop & Start system requires a 12V battery of specific technology and specification.  
All work must be carried out only by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

**E-AUTO MODE (MHEV)**

The petrol engine stops when low power or torque is required and in stabilized conditions. The petrol engine is restarted by the belt starter.

**The e-Auto mode can switch off the petrol engine in the following cases:**

- When the operating strategies permit.
- Vehicle speed up to 90 mph (145 km/h).
- When the driver releases the accelerator pedal in stabilized conditions or in deceleration.
- During the stop phases.

Restarting is only achieved by the belt starter until the torque demand is available, if the traction battery is sufficiently charged. When the torque demand is insufficient, the petrol engine restarts.

**Tip**

Using the steering wheel paddles also causes the restarting of petrol engine.

**The e-Auto mode cannot switch off the petrol engine in the following cases:**

- The state of charge is less than 30% of the traction battery energy.
- There is a need for vacuum brake assist depending on the altitude.
- The Sport mode is selected.
- Maintaining thermal comfort in the passenger compartment (heating, air conditioning, demisting/defrosting).

**Deactivation/Reactivation**

By default, the function is activated when the ignition is switched on.



It is configured in the **ADAS** touch screen application.

or Direct access to the **Shortcuts for driving aids**.

The display of a message on the instrument panel confirms the change of state.



Function deactivated, this indicator illuminates in the instrument panel.

**Tip**

If high traction is required, the driver can deactivate the e-Auto mode using the touch screen application.

**ENERGY ECONOMY MODE**

This system manages the duration of use of certain functions, in order to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery with the ignition off.

After switching off the engine and for a maximum cumulative period of around 40 minutes, you can continue to use functions such as the audio and telematics system, dipped beam headlights or courtesy lights.

**Selecting the mode**

A confirmation message is displayed when energy economy mode is entered, and the active functions are placed on standby.

**Tip**

If a telephone call is in progress at the time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes via the audio system's hands-free system.

**Exiting the mode**

These functions are automatically reactivated the next time the vehicle is used.

- ▶ To restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:
  - ▶ For less than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 5 minutes.
  - ▶ For more than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 30 minutes.
- ▶ Let the engine run for the specified duration to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.

To recharge the battery, avoid repeatedly or continuously restarting the engine.

**Warning**

A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.  
For more information on **Jumpstarting**, refer to the corresponding section.

**LOAD REDUCTION MODE**

This system manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.  
When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning and the heated rear screen.  
The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

**Brakes****ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE**

In automatic mode, this system applies the parking brake when the engine is switched off and releases it when the vehicle moves off.

**Indicator light**

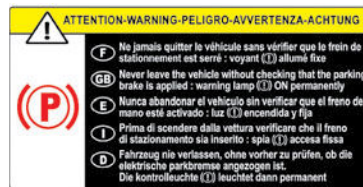
This indicator light comes on both on the instrument panel and on the control to confirm that the parking brake has been applied, accompanied by display of the message **"Parking brake applied"**.

The indicator light goes out to confirm the release of the parking brake, accompanied by the display of the message **"Parking brake released"**.

The indicator light flashes in response to a manual request to apply or release the brake.

**Warning**

In the event of a battery failure, the electric parking brake will not operate.  
As a safety measure, with an automatic gearbox or drive selector, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by placing the supplied chock against one of the wheels.  
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

**Warning**

Before leaving the vehicle, check that the parking brake is applied: the parking

brake indicator lamps on the instrument panel and the control must be on fixed.  
If the parking brake is not applied, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed on opening the driver's door.

**Warning**

Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle, as they could release the parking brake.

**Warning**

**When the vehicle is parked: on a steep slope, heavily loaded or during towing**

With an automatic gearbox, turn the wheels toward the pavement and select mode **P**.  
When towing, the vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.

**When the vehicle is parked on a slope**, the electric parking brake must be applied before engaging mode **P** of the automatic gearbox

**Manual Operation****Manual release**

With the ignition on or engine running:

- ▶ Press the brake pedal.
- ▶ While maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, briefly push the control.

**Tip**

If the brake pedal is not depressed, the parking brake is not released and a message is displayed.

## Manual application

With the vehicle stationary:

- Briefly pull the control.

The control indicator light flashes to confirm the application request.

## Automatic Operation

### Automatic release

First ensure that the engine is running and that the driver's door is closed.

**The electric parking brake gradually releases automatically as the vehicle moves off.**

### With an automatic gearbox

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Select mode **D, M** or **R**.
- Release the brake pedal and depress the accelerator pedal.

### With a drive selector

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Select mode **D, B** or **R**.
- Release the brake pedal and depress the accelerator pedal.



#### Tip

With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, if the brake does not release automatically, check that the front doors are properly closed.



#### Warning

When stationary with the engine running, do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily. Risk of parking brake release.

## Automatic application

**With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake is applied automatically when the engine is switched off.**



#### Warning

It is not applied automatically if the engine stalls or enters STOP mode with Stop & Start.



#### Tip

In automatic mode, the parking brake can be manually applied or released at any time using the control.

## Deactivating automatic operation

In some situations, for example when it is extremely cold or when towing (e.g. caravan, breakdown), it may be necessary to deactivate automatic operation of the system.

- Start the engine.
- Use the control to apply the parking brake, if it is released.
- Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.
- Push the control for 10 to a maximum of 15 seconds.
- Release the control.
- Depress and hold the brake pedal.
- Pull the control for 2 seconds.



This indicator light on the instrument panel comes on to confirm deactivation of the automatic functions.

- Release the control and the brake pedal.

From this point onwards, only the manual functions, using the control, allow the parking brake to be applied and released.

- Follow this procedure again to reactivate automatic operation (confirmed by the indicator light on the instrument panel going out).



#### Danger

**Do not park the vehicle or leave the engine running on a flammable surface (e.g. dry grass, dead leaves).**

The vehicle exhaust system is very hot, even several minutes after the engine stops. Risk of fire!



#### Warning



Before leaving the vehicle, check that the parking brake is applied: the parking brake indicator lights on the instrument panel and the control must be on fixed.

If the parking brake is not applied, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed on opening the driver's door.



#### Warning

**When the vehicle is parked: on a steep slope, heavily loaded or during towing**

With an automatic gearbox, turn the wheels toward the pavement and select mode **P**.

When towing, the vehicle is approved for parking on slopes up to 12%.

**When the vehicle is parked on a slope,** the electric parking brake must be applied before engaging mode **P** of the automatic gearbox.



### Warning

Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle, as they could release the parking brake.



### Warning

**Never drive with the parking brake applied.** Risk of overheating and damaging the braking system!

## Special cases

### Immobilizing the vehicle with the engine running

To immobilize the vehicle with the engine running, briefly pull the control.

### Parking the vehicle with the brake released



### Warning

In very cold conditions (ice), applying the parking brake is not recommended. To immobilise the vehicle, place the chock against one of the wheels.



### Tip

With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, mode **P** is automatically selected when the ignition is switched off. The wheels are blocked.

For more information on **Free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.



### Tip

With an automatic gearbox or a drive selector, if you open the driver's door while mode **N** is engaged, an audible signal will sound and mode **P** will be engaged. The audible signal stops when the driver's door is closed.

## ACTIVE EMERGENCY BRAKING

If depressing the brake pedal fails to provide effective braking or in exceptional circumstances (e.g. driver unwell, assisted driving), the vehicle can be braked by sustained pulling on the electric parking brake control. Braking continues for as long as the control is kept pulled, and ceases when the control is released. The ABS and DSC systems stabilize the vehicle during emergency braking. If emergency braking malfunctions, the message **"Parking brake fault"** will be displayed on the instrument panel.



If the ABS and DSC systems malfunction, indicated by lighting one or both warning lights on the instrument panel, the vehicle's stability is no longer ensured.

- In this case, ensure the vehicle's stability by successive and repeated "pull-release" actions on the electric parking brake control until the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

## REGENERATIVE BRAKING (PHEV)

### Using B Mode

The Brake function emulates engine braking, slowing the vehicle with no need to depress the brake pedal. The vehicle decelerates more quickly when the driver releases the accelerator pedal.

The energy recovered when the accelerator pedal is released is then used to partially recharge the traction battery, thereby increasing the vehicle's driving range.



### Warning

The resulting deceleration of the vehicle only causes the brake lights to come on above a certain level.

- Use the **B** button on the Drive selector to activate/deactivate the mode.

When the mode is active, D on the instrument panel is replaced with B. The mode status is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

### Using the brake pedal

When the brake pedal is depressed, the intelligent braking system automatically recovers some of the energy and uses it to recharge the traction battery. This energy recovery also reduces the use of the brake pads, thereby limiting their wear.



### Tip

The driver may experience a different sensation when depressing the brake pedal compared to a vehicle without regenerative braking.

**Warning**

In some situations (e.g. battery with high level of charge, extreme temperatures, extended use of regenerative braking e.g. prolonged downhill driving), the amount of regenerative braking may be temporarily limited, resulting in less deceleration.

**The driver must remain alert to traffic conditions and must always be ready to use the brake pedal.**

## REGENERATIVE BRAKING (BEV)

The Brake function emulates engine braking, slowing the vehicle with no need to depress the brake pedal.

The vehicle decelerates more quickly when the driver releases the accelerator pedal. The energy recovered when the accelerator pedal is released is then used to partially recharge the traction battery, thereby increasing the vehicle's driving range.

**Warning**

The resulting deceleration of the vehicle only causes the brake lights to come on above a certain level.

There are three levels of braking, controlled by using the paddles behind the steering wheel :



Decreases regenerative braking effect.



Increases regenerative braking effect.

For each level of deceleration, the information appears on the dashboard in the form of one or many more "down" arrows close to D.

**The deceleration level is saved when the ignition is switched off.**

**Tip**

If the conditions for the system to function are not met, a message is displayed on the cluster.

**Warning**

In some situations (e.g. battery with high charge level, prolonged use of regenerative braking e.g. extended downhill driving, extreme temperatures), the amount of regenerative braking may be temporarily limited, resulting in less deceleration.

**The driver must remain alert to traffic conditions and must always be ready to use the brake pedal.**

### With the brake pedal

When the brake pedal is depressed, the intelligent braking system automatically recovers some of the energy and uses it to recharge the traction battery. This energy recovery also reduces use of the brake pads, thereby limiting their wear.

**Tip**

The driver may experience a different sensation when depressing the brake pedal compared to a vehicle without regenerative braking.

## Transmission

### AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Automatic 6 or 7-speed transmission with push selector.

Depending on the propulsion type, it also offers a manual mode and a regenerative braking level control via the paddles located behind the steering wheel.

#### ICE/MHEV Vehicles



## PHEV vehicles



## BEV vehicles



- P.** Park
- R.** Reverse
- N.** Neutral
- D.** Drive

- M.** Manual. Use the paddles on the steering wheel to shift gears. (ICE and MHEV)
- B.** Automatic mode with Regenerative braking. (PHEV)
  - In mode **N**, with your foot on the brake pedal, push without passing the point of resistance:
    - Forwards, mode **R** is selected.
    - Backwards, mode **D** is selected.

**Release the selector fully after each push; it will then return to its initial position.**

## Special cases

To avoid mode **N** (quick change from **D** to **R** and back again):

- ▶ In mode **R**, push backwards past the point of resistance, mode **D** is selected.
- ▶ In mode **D**, push forwards past the point of resistance, mode **R** is selected.
- ▶ To return to mode **N**, push without passing the point of resistance.

## Special aspects of manual mode

The gearbox only changes from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions permit.

The petrol engine can also be switched off in manual mode when stopped in traffic or when the accelerator pedal is released.

For MHEV vehicles, the all-electric potential of the driving mode used (**Normal or Eco**) is also retained.

For PHEV vehicles, the all-electric potential of the driving mode used (**Hybrid or Electric**) is also retained.



## Tip

Using the steering wheel paddles also causes the restarting of petrol engine. If high traction is required, the driver can deactivate the e-Auto mode using the touch screen application.

## MHEV, PHEV electric motor functions

The electric motor included in the automatic gearbox, which is used for the first start, provides

12 V power supply via the DC/DC converter and provides electric assistance to the petrol engine.

The electric motor has the following features:

- Provide an additional torque to the gearbox, optimizing the performance of the petrol engine.
- Recover the kinetic energy of the deceleration phases, converting it into electrical energy, which can be used for traction or for the power supply of electrical accessories installed on the vehicle.
- Recharge the 48 V traction battery when the state of charge is too low.
- Provide all-electric driving only.

These features are achieved through the following functions set of automatic operating mode: – e-Boost.

- e-Creeping.
- e-Launch.
- e-Queueing.
- e-Parking.

A manual operating mode is also available to activate/deactivate the restart of the petrol engine while driving: the e-Auto mode.

### Tip

When mode **P** or **N** is selected on the automatic gearbox, the noise level in the engine compartment may increase due to the start of the charging phase of the traction battery: this is normal and does not represent a malfunction.

### Special aspects of automatic mode

These functions respond to common driving situations where the electric motor is available to provide additional power or zero-emission driving.

### Tip

These functions are only available if the traction battery is sufficiently charged. These five functions cannot be deactivated.

#### e-Launch

With the petrol engine off, this function allows the vehicle to run in electric mode without affecting performance.

By depressing the accelerator pedal, the vehicle starts to drive as soon as the mode **D** or **R** of the automatic gearbox is selected.

#### e-Creeping

With the petrol engine off, by releasing the brake pedal, this function allows the vehicle to be moved forward or backward in electric mode without having to depress the accelerator pedal, as soon as the mode **D** or **R** of the automatic gearbox is selected.

#### e-Queueing

This function makes it possible to follow a queue of vehicles with several stops followed by restarts of the vehicle, using the e-Creeping, e-Launch and electric driving modes.

#### e-Parking

This function allows parking maneuvers to be carried out at reduced speed with the help of the electric motor when the mode **D** or **R** of the automatic gearbox is selected.

#### e-Boost

This function allows simultaneous operation of the petrol engine and the electric motor, combined with the automatic gearbox. By fully depressing the accelerator pedal ("kickdown" function), when the traction battery is fully charged, it is possible to exceed the torque of the petrol engine alone, thanks to the additional torque provided by the electric motor.

### Tip

Repeated use of the brake pedal causes the restart of petrol engine to provide braking assistance.

### Information displayed on the instrument panel

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox status is displayed on the instrument panel:

|           |                        |
|-----------|------------------------|
| <b>P.</b> | Parking                |
| <b>R.</b> | Reverse                |
| <b>N.</b> | Neutral                |
| <b>D.</b> | Automatic forward gear |

### M1...6 Manual forward gear

The gear engaged is also displayed in Sport mode.

The state of the gearbox remains displayed on the instrument panel for a few seconds after switching off the ignition.

## FREEWHEELING

In certain situations, it is necessary to put the vehicle into free-wheeling mode (e.g. towing, on a rolling road, automatic car wash (Wash mode), rail or sea transport).

### Warning

Never leave the vehicle unattended with the vehicle into free-wheeling mode.

### Warning

When the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox or a drive selector, it is strongly recommended to stay inside the vehicle when it is in free-wheeling mode.

### Release procedure

- ▶ Depress and hold the brake pedal.
- ▶ Select and hold the mode **N** on the push selector.
- ▶ Press the **START/STOP** button around 1 s to switch off the engine (confirmed by the flashing of the **P** and **N** indicator lights).
- ▶ Release the brake pedal to switch on the ignition and deactivate the electric parking brake.

**Warning**

A message is displayed on the instrument panel to confirm the unlocking of the wheels for 15 minutes. When the vehicle is free-wheeling, the audio system cannot be updated (message displayed on the instrument panel).

**After 15 minutes or reverting to normal operation**

- ▶ While depressing the brake pedal, restart the engine and select mode **P**.

**Tip****Keyless Entry and Start**

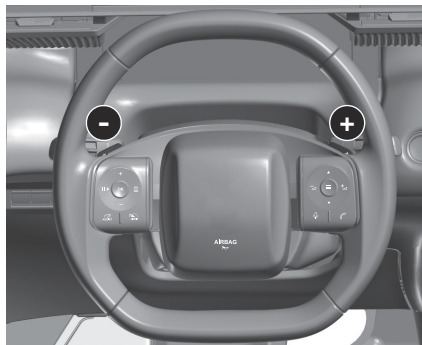
You must not depress the brake pedal while switching the ignition on again, then switching it off. If you do, the engine will start, requiring you to restart the procedure.

**STEERING WHEEL-MOUNTED CONTROL PADDLES**

(Depending on equipment)

On ICE/MHEV/PHEV versions In mode **M** or **D**, the steering-mounted control paddles can be used to change gear manually. They cannot be used to select neutral or to engage or disengage reverse gear.

On BEV versions, the paddles control the amount of regenerative braking.

**ICE/MHEV/PHEV vehicles:**

Selects next gear up.

**BEV vehicles:**

Decreases regenerative braking effect.

**ICE/MHEV/PHEV vehicles:**

Selects next gear down.

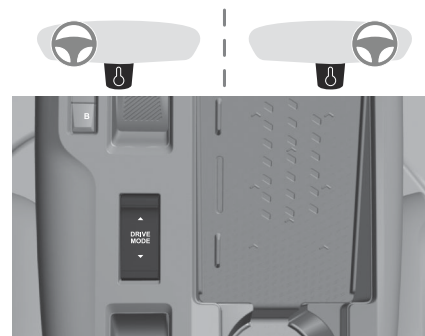
**BEV vehicles:**

Increases regenerative braking effect.

**Drive Modes**

The driving modes available depend on the engine and equipment of the vehicle.

Driving modes are selected using the following control:



- ▶ Press the control to display and scroll through the modes on the Infotainment Display. The modes can also be selected by touching the screen.

The selected mode (except **Normal**) will be displayed on the Cluster.

**Tip****Kick-down**

It is always possible to obtain maximum torque and power by fully depressing the accelerator pedal.

## ICE, MHEV VEHICLES



### Tip

#### Coasting mode (Petrol)

Depending on version and engine, with the gear selector in mode **D**, in **Eco** and **Normal** modes, gradually and fully releasing the accelerator pedal allows free-wheeling which can save fuel.

A drop in engine speed is normal (rev counter at idle, drop in engine noise).

### Normal

Default settings.

### Eco

Reduces energy consumption by reducing the performance of the heating and air conditioning, without deactivating them.

### Sport

Designed to provide more dynamic driving with action on the power steering, accelerator and gear changes.

The selection of the **Sport** mode deactivates the Stop & Start function.

## PHEV VEHICLES

### Electric

Allows driving using 100% electrical energy. The maximum speed is approximately 84 mph (135 km/h).

When starting the vehicle, if the conditions do not allow the activation or retention of **Electric** mode, the message "**Electric mode currently unavailable**" is displayed on the instrument panel. The vehicle automatically changes to Hybrid mode.

### Conditions of activation

- Adequate battery charge level. Charging the vehicle after each drive is therefore recommended. **Electric** mode is available as long as there is power left in the battery.
- Outside temperature between approximately -5°C and 45°C.

### Manually exiting the mode

- ▶ Fully depress the accelerator pedal, or
- ▶ Select another mode.



### Tip

In case of non-use of the vehicle for a long period (several months), a restart of the petrol engine may occur even if the battery is charged.



### Warning

In the event of multiple starts of the internal combustion engine without a sufficient rise in temperature, **Electric** mode may be temporarily unavailable (natural phenomenon of dilution of fuel in oil). The message "**Electric mode unavailable: automatic operation in progress**" then appears on the instrument panel. To regain normal electrical operation, drive approximately 50 miles (80 km) in "motorway" conditions or approximately 125 miles (200 km) in urban conditions. This phenomenon does not cause any mechanical or electrical damage. It can occur several times in the life of the vehicle.

### Hybrid

To optimise the vehicle's fuel consumption by managing the **alternating or simultaneous**

**operation of the two types of engine**, depending on driving conditions and driving style.

In **Hybrid** mode, it is possible to drive in 100% electric mode if the battery charge level is sufficient and acceleration requirements are moderate.

The power meter will display the threshold where the system will switch between the ICE and the electric drive.

### Sport

To obtain more dynamic driving in order to benefit from the maximum performance of the vehicle.

Electric power is used to supplement the petrol engine as long as there is energy left in the battery.

The selection of the **Sport** mode deactivates the Stop & Start function and e-Save mode.

## BEV VEHICLES

Each time the ignition is switched on, **Normal** mode is selected by default.



### Tip

#### Kick-down

In **Normal** and **Eco** modes, it is always possible to obtain maximum torque and power by depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

### Normal

Optimises the driving range and dynamic performance.

### Eco

Optimises energy consumption, by reducing the output of the heating and air conditioning

(without actually deactivating them) and limiting both motor torque and power.

### Sport

Enables more dynamic driving, acting on the power steering and accelerator.

## GRIP CONTROL MODES

This special patented traction control system improves grip on snow, mud and sand.



### Tip

For optimum grip on snow, the vehicle is equipped with winter tyres (3PMSF) or 4-season tyres (M+S), depending on country of sale.

## Operating Modes

### Snow

This mode constantly adapts the level of wheel spin to offer maximum traction according to the snow conditions (a lot of wheel spin in thick snow; very little on ice). The wheel spin is also adapted to the conditions encountered when driving uphill by optimizing the acceleration of the vehicle. (mode active up to 50 mph (80 km/h))

### Mud

This mode, when moving off, allows considerable spin on the wheel with the least grip to optimize clearing of the mud and to regain grip. At the same time, the wheel with the most grip is controlled in such a way as to transmit as much traction torque as possible. When moving, the system optimizes wheel spin to respond to the driver's requirements as fully as possible. (mode active up to 31 mph (50 km/h))

### Sand

This mode allows little spin on the two driving wheels at the same time to allow the vehicle to move forward and limit the risks of getting stuck in the sand.

(mode active up to 75 mph (120 km/h))



### Warning

Do not use the other modes on sand as the vehicle may become stuck.



### Tip

### Recommendations

The vehicle is designed principally to drive on tarmac roads, but it may occasionally drive on other less passable terrain.

However, it does not permit off-road driving:

- Driving on terrain that can damage the underbody or tear off elements (e.g. Fuel pipe, fuel cooler) by obstacles or stones in particular.
- Driving on terrain with steep gradients and poor grip.
- Crossing a waterway.

## Engine Exhaust



### Danger

Engine exhaust gases contain poisonous carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless and could be fatal if inhaled.

- If exhaust gases enter the interior of the vehicle, open the windows.

- Have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop.
- Avoid driving with an open load compartment, otherwise exhaust gases could enter the vehicle.

## EXHAUST FILTER

### Automatic cleaning process

The exhaust filter system filters soot particles out of the exhaust gases.



When illuminated, indicates the start of saturation of the exhaust filter, accompanied by a message in the Cluster.

As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a vehicle speed of at least 60 km/h (36 mph) until the control indicator extinguishes.



### Tip

On a new vehicle, the first exhaust filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a burning smell, which is normal. Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, water vapor can be emitted at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behavior of the vehicle or the environment.

**Cleaning process not possible**

If illuminated steadily, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, this indicates that the exhaust filter additive level is too low. The reservoir must be topped-up without delay. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

**CATALYTIC CONVERTER**

The catalytic converter reduces the amount of harmful substances in the exhaust gases.

**Tip**

Fuel grades other than those listed in the "Fuel" chapter could damage the catalytic converter or electronic components. Unburnt petrol will overheat and damage the catalytic converter. Therefore avoid excessive use of the starter, running the fuel tank dry and starting the engine by pushing or towing.

In the event of misfiring, uneven engine running, a reduction in engine performance or other unusual problems, have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop as soon as possible. In an emergency, driving can be continued for a short period, keeping vehicle speed and engine speed low.

**Fuel**

Petrol fuels conforming to the EN228 standard containing up to 5% and 10% ethanol respectively.

**Warning**

The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (e.g. pure or diluted vegetable or animal oils, domestic fuel) is strictly prohibited - risk of damaging the engine and fuel system!

**Tip**

The only fuel additives authorized for use are those that meet the B715001 (Petrol) standards.

**Electrified Vehicles****GENERAL RECOMMENDATIONS**

These recommendations and general information apply to electrified vehicles:

- MHEV
- PHEV
- BEV

**High voltage system****Danger**

The High voltage system voltage is dangerous and can cause burns or other injuries or even fatal electric shock. Since damage to high voltage components is not visible, dealer recommends that you:

- Never touch the components, damaged or not, and never let your jewelry or other metallic objects come into contact with these components.

- Never work on the high voltage cables (purple or orange) or on any other high voltage component marked with the Electric risk label. Any intervention on the high voltage system must be carried out by qualified persons in workshops qualified and approved to carry out this type of work.
- Never damage, modify or remove the high voltage cables (purple or orange) or disconnect them from the high voltage network.
- Never open, modify or remove the cover of the traction battery.
- Never work with cutting and forming tools or heat sources near high voltage components and cables.

Any intervention on the high voltage system must be carried out by qualified persons in workshops qualified and approved to carry out this type of work.

**Danger**

Damage to the vehicle or the traction battery could result in the leakage of toxic gases or fluids either immediately or later. The Manufacturer recommends that you:

- Always inform the fire and emergency services in the event of an incident, warning that the vehicle is equipped with a traction battery.
- Never touch the liquids leaking from the traction battery.
- Do not inhale the gases emitted by the traction battery which are toxic.

- Move away from the vehicle in the event of incident or accident, the gases emitted being flammable and could cause a fire.

### **Danger**

In case of low level of fluid in the cooling tank, the refilling shall only be performed in a qualified and trained workshop to verify that the leakage is not in the traction battery.

### **Warning**

#### **High-pressure washing**

To avoid damaging the electrical components, it is expressly prohibited to use high-pressure washing in the engine compartment or under the body. Do not use a pressure greater than 80 bar when washing the bodywork.

### **Warning**

#### **In the event of an impact to the vehicle's underbody**

In these situations, the electrical circuit or the traction battery can be seriously damaged. Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Move away from the vehicle. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

### **Warning**

#### **In the event of an accident with an airbag deployment**

The traction battery is automatically disconnected from the electrical circuit to prevent the initiation of short circuits and/or fires.

### **Warning**

This system may be hot both when the ignition is on and after switching it off. Comply with the warning messages shown on the labels.

#### **MHEV vehicles**

The 48 V Li-ion (Lithium-ion) traction battery stores the electrical energy needed to propel the vehicle.

The electrical circuit of the MHEV system is identified by purple cables and its components are marked with this symbol:



The traction battery is automatically charged to ensure that the charge level is always around

50% of the maximum level, in order to fully exploit the MHEV functionality and, at the same time, always have some capacity available for the energy recovery operation. It is located under the front left seat. The traction battery's range varies depending on the type of driving, the route and the aging of its components.

### **Tip**

The traction battery aging depends on several factors, such as climatic conditions and the distance traveled.

### **Caution**

To preserve the range of your vehicle and the durability of your traction battery, the manufacturer recommends that you:

- Do not expose the vehicle to temperatures below -30°C and above +60°C for more than 24 hours.
- Do not use a generator to recharge your vehicle's traction battery.

### **Tip**

#### **Vehicle in storage for more than 1 month**

Always park the vehicle in a place with temperatures between -10°C and +30°C (parking in a place with extreme temperatures can damage the traction battery).

Carry out the charging procedure for the traction battery (48V) via the accessory battery (12V) and the DC/DC converter.

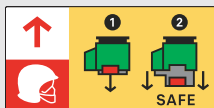
Refer to the **In Case of Emergency/ Jumpstarting** section for the charging the batteries using a battery charger procedure.

## PHEV, BEV vehicles

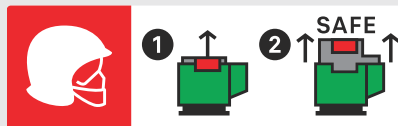
### Warning

These labels are intended solely for use by firefighters and maintenance services in the event of any work on the vehicle. No other person must touch the device shown on the following labels:

#### PHEV:



#### BEV:



### Caution

To preserve the range of your vehicle and the durability of the battery, the manufacturer recommends that :

- The battery should be charged only up to 80% as much as possible.
- Never allow the battery charge to reach 0%
- In case of long-term storage (more than 12h) when the level of charge of the

traction battery is low or high, prefer a charge level between 20 and 40%.

- Limit the use of fast charging.
- Do not expose the vehicle to temperatures below -30°C or above +60°C for more than 24h.
- Avoid charging the vehicle when the temperature is below 0°C (except if the vehicle has been driving for more than 20 minutes) or above +30°C.
- Do not use your vehicle's traction battery as an energy source unless your vehicle is fitted with the Vehicle to Load (V2L) system.
- Do not use a generator to recharge the traction battery of the vehicle.

### Caution

#### When washing

Before washing the vehicle, always check that the charging flap is closed correctly. Never wash the vehicle while the battery is on charge.

## Traction battery

### Overheating



If the following warning lights appear, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, it is required to:

- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible in the best conditions of safety.
- Switch off the ignition.

- Evacuate the vehicle as quickly as possible and move to a safe distance.
- Call the fire department and/or the emergency services and tell them that the vehicle is an electric one.

### Danger

A chain reaction can occur up to a traction battery fire.

### Warning

#### In the event of damage to the traction battery

It is strictly prohibited to work on the vehicle yourself.

Do not touch liquids coming from the battery, and in the event of skin contact with these products, wash abundantly with water and contact a doctor as soon as possible. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

### Disposal of the traction battery

The traction battery is designed for the life of the vehicle if the recommendations of dealer are followed.

If it becomes necessary to replace the battery, contact the dealer dealer for instructions on its disposal. Improper disposal carries the risk of severe burns, electric shock, and damage to the environment.

In accordance with regulations, dealer ensures a second life or recycling of this component in collaboration with qualified operators.

## CHARGING SYSTEM

The electrical circuit of the electric system is identified by orange cables and its components are marked with this symbol:



### Danger

#### In the event of a problem

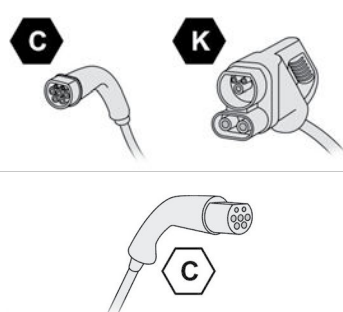
All work on or modifications to the vehicle's electrical system (including the traction battery, connectors, orange cables and other components visible from the interior or exterior) is strictly prohibited - Risk of severe burns or potentially fatal electric shock (short-circuit/electrocution)! Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Charging cables, sockets and chargers

The traction battery can be charged using several different types of cables. The charging cables supplied with the vehicle are compatible with the electrical installations of the country of sale. If you are traveling abroad, refer to the following tables to check the compatibility of local electrical installations with the charging cables. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the appropriate charging cable(s).

### Identification labels on charging sockets/connectors

Identification labels are affixed to the vehicle, charging cable and charger to inform the user about which device needs to be used.



| Charging Type                                                              | Compatibility                                             | Specifications                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <b>Mode 2 charging cable with integrated control unit</b><br>              | Conventional electrical socket (depending on country)<br> | Charge limited to a maximum of 10 A |
| Identification label <b>C</b> on the charging connector (vehicle side)<br> | <b>green'up</b> type socket<br>                           | Charge limited to a maximum of 16 A |

| Charging Type                                                                                                 | Compatibility                         | Specifications                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Mode 3 charging cable</b><br>                                                                              | Accelerated charging unit socket.<br> | Charge limited to a maximum of 32 A per phase. |
| Identification labels <b>C</b> on the charging connector (vehicle side) and on the socket (charger side).<br> | Accelerated charging unit.<br>        |                                                |
| <b>Mode 4 charging cable</b><br>                                                                              | Superfast DC charging station<br>     | Up to 250 A.                                   |
| Identification labels <b>K</b> on the charging connector (vehicle side) and on the socket (charger side).<br> |                                       |                                                |



### Tip

The estimated charging time is indicated on the instrument panel when the

vehicle is connected. It may vary depending on various factors such as the outside temperature or the quality of the electricity supply.

If the outside temperature is below 10°C, it is recommended to connect the vehicle as soon as possible as the charging time may increase significantly. The traction battery may not charge fully.



### Caution

#### Domestic charging cable (mode 2)

It is recommended to have the domestic electrical network inspected by a professional before using it to charge your vehicle.

It is essential to avoid damaging the cable and to keep it intact.

In the event of damage, do not use it and contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to replace it.



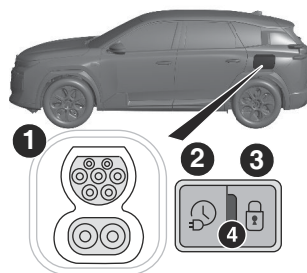
### Caution

#### Accelerated charging unit (mode 3)

Do not dismantle or modify the accelerated charging unit - risk of electrocution and/or fire! To find out how it is used, please refer to the accelerated charging unit's user instructions.

### Charging flap

The charging flap is located on the rear left-hand side of the vehicle.



1. Charging connector
2. Deferred charging activation button
3. Nozzle locking indicator light  
Steady red: nozzle positioned correctly and locked into the connector.  
Flashing red: nozzle incorrectly positioned or locking not possible.
4. Charging indicator light



| Status of charging indicator light | Meaning                                                                    |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Steady white                       | Welcome lighting on opening the flap and disconnecting the charging cable. |

|                |                          |
|----------------|--------------------------|
| Flashing white | Charging initialization. |
| Steady blue    | Deferred charging.       |
| Flashing green | Charging in progress.    |
| Steady green   | Charging complete.       |
| Steady red     | Malfunction.             |



### Danger

In case of impact, even light, against the charging flap, do not use it. Do not dismantle or modify the charging connector - risk of electrocution and/or fire! Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.



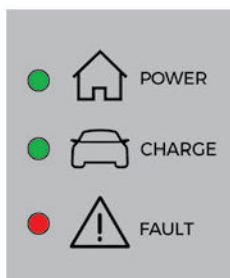
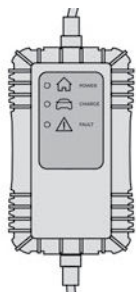
### Warning

Take care not to pass the charging cable under the bumper when connecting or disconnecting it, as this may inadvertently open the tailgate.

### Control unit (mode 2)

Refer to the handbook supplied with the control unit before use.

If resetting the device does not work, consult a dealer or qualified workshop



Illuminated steadily when the device is powered.



Illuminated steadily when charge is complete or battery is in preconditioning phase.  
Flashing when power is flowing to the vehicle.



Illuminated steadily during self test or in case of fault.

### Manual reset procedure

The control unit can be reset by simultaneously disconnecting the charging connector and the wall socket.

Then, reconnect the wall socket first. For more information, refer to the handbook supplied with the control unit.

## CHARGING PROCEDURE



### Tip

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on electrified vehicles** and the Specific recommendations on **BEV**.

To recharge, connect the vehicle to a domestic electricity supply (domestic or accelerated charging) or to a fast public charger (superfast charging).

For a full charge, follow the desired charging procedure without pausing it, until it ends automatically. Charging can be either immediate or deferred (except fast public charger, mode 4).

When the vehicle is connected, the following information is displayed on the instrument panel:

- Traction battery charge status (%).
- Remaining range (miles or km).
- Estimated charging time (calculation may take a few seconds).
- Charging speed (miles or km gained per hour).

After the instrument panel has been put into standby mode, this information can be displayed again by unlocking the vehicle or opening a door.

You can stop domestic or accelerated charging at any time by unlocking the vehicle and removing the nozzle. For superfast charging, refer to the fast public charger.

For more information on the charging displays on the Instrument panel and the Touch screen, refer to the corresponding section.



### Caution

As a safety measure, the engine will not start if the charging cable is plugged into the connector on the vehicle. A warning is displayed on the instrument panel.



### Tip

#### Cooling the traction battery

The cooling fan in the engine compartment comes on during charging to cool the on-board charger and the traction battery.



### Warning

#### Low charge / Driving

Driving when the charge level of the traction battery is too low can lead to the vehicle breaking down and can lead to accidents or serious injuries. ALWAYS make sure the traction battery has a sufficient charge level.



### Caution

#### Low charge / Parking

If the outside temperature is negative, it is recommended not to park your vehicle outside for several hours at a low charging (less than 20%).

**Caution****Vehicle in storage for more than 1 month**

In the event of a long period of non-use of the vehicle (beyond 4 weeks) without the possibility of charging when restarting, the self-discharge may make it impossible to restart if the traction battery charge level is a low or very low, especially at negative ambient temperatures. ALWAYS make sure that the traction battery has a charge between 20% and 40% if you do not plan to use your vehicle for several weeks. Do not connect the charging cable.

Always park the vehicle in a place with temperatures between -10°C and 30°C (parking in a place with extreme temperatures can damage the traction battery). Disconnect the cable from the (+) terminal of the accessory battery in the engine compartment.

Connect a 12 V battery charger to the (+) and (-) terminals of the accessory battery about every 3 months in order to recharge the accessory battery and maintain an operating voltage.

Refer to the **12 V battery/Accessory batteries** section for the battery disconnection procedure.

**Connection**

- Before charging, check that the drive selector is in mode **P**, otherwise charging is not possible.
- Press on the symbols on the rear of the charging flap to open it, and check that

there are no foreign bodies on the charging connector.

**Caution****Before charging**

Depending on the context:

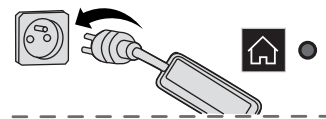
- Have a professional check that the electrical system to be used complies with applicable standards and is compatible with the vehicle.
- Have a professional electrician install a dedicated domestic power socket or accelerated charging unit (Wallbox) compatible with the vehicle.

You should preferably use the charging cable available as an accessory. For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

**Danger****During charging**

While charging is in progress, unlocking the vehicle will cause the charging to stop. If no action is taken on one of the openings (door or trunk) or on the charging nozzle, the vehicle will lock again after 30 seconds and charging will resume automatically. Never work under the hood:

- Some areas remain very hot, even an hour after charging ends - risk of burns!
- The fan may start at any time - risk of cuts or strangulation!

**Domestic charging (Mode 2)**

- Connect the charging cable from the control unit to the domestic socket.

When the connection is made, all of the indicator lights on the control unit illuminate, then only the **POWER** indicator light remains on in green.

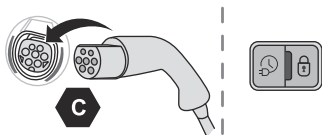
- Remove the protective cover from the charging nozzle.
- Insert the nozzle into the charging connector.

The start of charging is confirmed by the flashing green **CHARGE** indicator lights in the flap, then those on the control unit. If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that all connections are properly established. The red indicator light in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

**Tip**

When charging is complete and while the charging cable is still connected, opening the driver's door will display the charge level on the instrument panel for about 20 seconds.

### Accelerated charging (Mode 3)



- ▶ Follow the accelerated charging unit user instructions.
- ▶ Remove the protective cover from the charging nozzle.
- ▶ Insert the nozzle into the charging connector.

The start of charging is confirmed when the charging indicator light in the flap flashes green.

If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that the connection has been properly established. The red indicator light in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

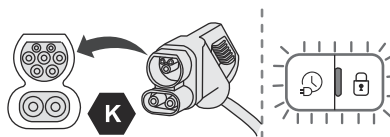
### Superfast charging (Mode 4)

#### **Tip** **Before charging**

Check that the fast public charging station and its charging cable are compatible with the vehicle.

If the exterior temperature is below:

- 32°F (0°C), charging times may be extended.
- -4°F (-20°C), charging is still possible, but charging times may be extended even further (the battery has to be heated first).



- ▶ Depending on version, remove the protective cover from the lower part of the connector.
- ▶ Follow the instructions for use of the fast public charger and connect the cable from the fast public charger to the vehicle's connector.

The start of charging is confirmed by the flashing green charging indicator light in the flap.

If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that the connection is properly established. The red indicator light in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

### Disconnection

Before disconnecting the nozzle from the charging connector:

- ▶ If the vehicle is unlocked, **lock it and then unlock it.**
- ▶ If the vehicle is locked, unlock it.

The red indicator light in the charging flap goes out to confirm that the charging nozzle is unlocked.

- ▶ In modes 2 and 3, remove the charging nozzle within **30 seconds**.

The charging indicator light comes on in white.

 **Tip**  
With selective door unlocking activated, press the unlocking button twice to disconnect the charging nozzle.

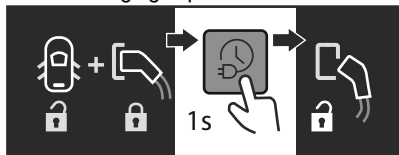
 **Tip**  
When charging is complete, the green charging indicator light in the flap goes out after about 2 minutes.

#### **Danger** **After charging**

Check that the charging flap is closed. Do not leave the cable connected to the domestic power socket - risk of short-circuit or electrocution in the event of contact with or immersion in water!

### Manual unlocking of the charging connector

If the nozzle stays locked in the charging port, press and hold the deferred charging button inside the charging flap to unlock it.



### DEFERRED CHARGING

Deferred charging allows to set a specific time for the start of the charge.

By default, the deferred charging start time is set to be around midnight. This time can be changed.

#### Settings



- ▶ In the **Energy** touch screen application, select the **Charging** tab.
- ▶ Set the charging start time.
- ▶ Press **OK** to confirm.

The setting is saved in the system.



You can also program the deferred charging function using a smartphone, via the **MyCitroen** application.

For more information on **Remotely operable additional functions**, refer to the corresponding section.

### BATTERY CHARGE LIMITER

The Battery Charge Limiter function is part of the systems designed to preserve the battery's integrity and performance for the whole duration of the vehicle's life. This limit is set at **80%** for daily use.

If you exceptionally want to change the charging limit, e.g. for longer journeys, you can disable this limit and charge up to 100%.



#### Tip

This limit does not apply for DC fast charging (Mode 4).



#### Tip

Upon delivery of a new vehicle, it is possible that the charge limiter is not activated. Check and activate the limiter if required.

#### Activation

If the Battery Charge Limit is not enabled, it is possible to manually enable it.



- ▶ Open the **Energy** App
- ▶ Go to the **Charging** Tab
- ▶ Enable the **Charge Limit**.

#### Deactivation



- ▶ Open the **Energy** App
- ▶ Go to the **Charging** Tab
- ▶ Disable the **Charge Limit**.



#### Caution

It is not recommended to leave the charging limit disabled, it will negatively impact the battery's health over time and reduce overall performance.

### Battery Care Mode

Battery Care Mode automates the management of the charge limiter.

If the charge limiter is disabled, once the charge to 100% is complete, Battery Care Mode will reactivate it for the next charge.

#### Disabling Battery Care Mode

To permanently disable Battery Care Mode:



- ▶ Open the **Energy** app
- ▶ Open the **Charging** tab
- ▶ Tap on the cogwheel next to the charge limiter 
- ▶ Tap to disable Battery Care Mode



#### Tip

After 1500km with Battery Care Mode disabled, a pop-up will be displayed every time the vehicle is started to advise the driver to reactivate Battery Care Mode.

### BATTERY PRECONDITIONING

To achieve the best charging performance for the battery and provide consistent charging times, the battery needs to achieve a specific temperature.

Battery preconditioning allows to heat up the battery up to this temperature in preparation for a charging stop.

**i Tip**  
If the battery charge level is below 30%, preconditioning is not available.

**i Tip**  
Activating the preconditioning will use a small portion of the battery charge, impacting the range of the vehicle.

### Manual preconditioning

Manual battery preconditioning is activated by the driver when a charging stop is expected.



- ▶ Open the **Energy** App.
- ▶ Go to the **Charging** Tab.
- ▶ Activate the **Battery preconditioning**.

**i Tip**  
Thermal preconditioning is most effective when it is activated 30-45 minutes before starting a charge to allow the battery to reach its ideal temperature.

### Automatic Preconditioning with Trip Planner

(Depending on version)

When a trip including charging stops is entered in the navigation system, the system will automatically start the preconditioning process to reach the charging station with the battery ready to charge in optimal conditions.

### Automatic Activation before departure

If the vehicle is plugged in and the battery has more than 80% charge, programming a departure time in the screen or via the smartphone app will program both the cabin and battery preconditioning to reach ideal preset temperatures before starting a trip. This is useful if a charge shortly after departure is expected.

### VEHICLE TO LOAD (V2L)

Vehicle to Load (V2L) is a function that allows the use of the traction battery to power or charge external devices as long as the battery is above 30% charge. If the battery reaches 30%, the energy transfer will stop automatically. The adapter plugs into the charging port of the vehicle and offers a standard 230V / 16A plug for connecting the external device.



#### Warning

Misuse of the adapter can cause electric shocks or start a fire.



#### Warning

The device is waterproof against rainfall, but it is not advisable to connect it in bad weather as it can damage the external device. The V2L adapter does not resist being submerged.



#### Tip

Using the device will drain the battery, check that the vehicle is charged sufficiently to reach a charging point.



#### Tip

Pay attention to the vehicle and the external device when using V2L so that only the intended persons use the system.



#### Tip

For more information, please refer to the manual supplied with the V2L device.

### Activation

With the vehicle unlocked and ignition ON:

- ▶ Plug in the adapter in the socket.
- ▶ Press the button on the adapter.
- ▶ When the LED on the adapter is illuminated steady green, plug the external device into the adapter

When connected, the infotainment display will open a dedicated Energy Transfer page, and the following LEDs will illuminate:



Flashing green



Steady



### Deactivation

- ▶ Press the button on the adapter to stop powering the external device
- ▶ Unplug the external device
- ▶ Unplug the adapter and close the charging port.

## Vehicle Loading

### ROOF BARS

#### **Warning**

As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use transverse roof bars approved for your vehicle.

Observe the instructions on fitting and use contained in the guide supplied with the roof bars.

#### **Warning**

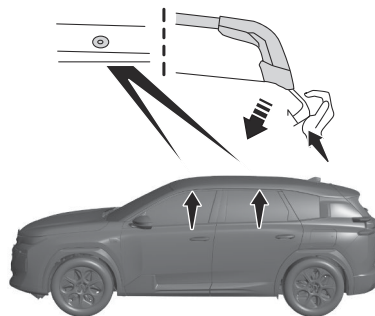
Maximum load distributed over the transverse roof bars, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm (except bicycle carrier): **80 kg.**

As this value may change, please verify the maximum load quoted in the guide supplied with the roof bars.

If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road, to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the vehicle.

Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects that are longer than the vehicle.

### Direct fitting on roof



The transverse bars must only be fixed at the four anchorage points located on the roof frame.

These points are concealed by the vehicle doors when the doors are closed. The roof bar fixings have a stud which must be inserted into the opening of each anchorage point.

#### **Warning**

#### **Recommendations**

Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one of the sides.

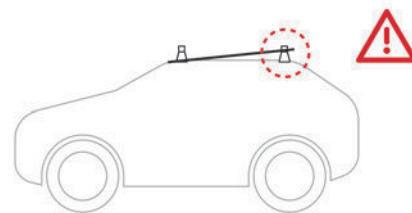
Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.

Secure the load firmly.

Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds and its stability may be affected.

Regularly check the security and tight fastening of the roof bars, at least before each trip.

Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.



#### **Warning**

#### **Sunroof**

If the sunroof remains open, the vehicle is locked with exterior perimeter monitoring

activated but without interior volumetric or anti-tilt monitoring.

## Trailer Towing

### GENERAL INFORMATION



#### Caution

For new vehicles, only tow a trailer after having driven at least 1000 km.



#### Caution

For MHEV models in high altitude conditions (>2500 m ASL) towing capacity is restricted as it may affect vehicle performance.

Only use towing equipment that has been approved for your vehicle. Entrust retrofitting of towing equipment to a workshop. It may be necessary to make changes that affect the cooling system, heat shields or other equipment. Fitting of towing equipment could cover the opening of the towing eye. If this is the case, use the coupling ball bar for towing. Always keep the coupling ball bar in the vehicle to have it on hand if needed.

### Trailer Loads

The permissible trailer loads are vehicle and engine-dependent maximum values which must not be exceeded. The actual trailer load is the difference between the actual gross weight of the trailer and the actual coupling socket load with the trailer coupled.

The permissible trailer loads are specified in the vehicle documents. In general, they are valid for inclines up to 12%.

The permissible trailer load applies up to the specified incline and at sea level. Since engine power decreases as altitude increases due to the air becoming thinner, therefore reducing climbing ability, the permissible gross train weight also decreases by 10% for every 1000 m of altitude. The gross train weight does not have to be reduced when driving on roads with slight inclines (less than 8%, e.g. motorways). The permissible gross train weight must not be exceeded. This weight is specified on the identification plate.

### Vertical coupling load



#### Warning

If attaching accessories to the trailer hitch such as bicycle carriers, tow boxes etc., do comply with the maximum permissible vertical coupling load. When using a bicycle carrier, do not transport more than four conventional bicycles or two electric bicycles. Make sure to place the heaviest bicycle as close as possible to the vehicle.

The vertical coupling load is the load exerted by the trailer on the coupling ball. It can be varied by changing the weight distribution when loading the trailer.

The maximum permissible vertical coupling load 80 kg is specified on the towing equipment identification plate and in the vehicle documents. Always aim for the maximum vertical coupling load, especially in the case of heavy trailers. The

vertical coupling load should never fall below 25 kg.

### Rear axle load

When the trailer is coupled and the towing vehicle fully loaded, the permissible rear axle load (see identification plate or vehicle documents) may be exceeded by 60 kg, the gross vehicle weight rating must not be exceeded. If the permissible rear axle load is exceeded, a maximum speed of 100 km/h (60 mph) applies.

### Driving characteristics and towing tips

Before attaching a trailer, lubricate the coupling ball. However, do not do so if a stabilizer, which acts on the coupling ball, is being used to reduce snaking movements.

During trailer towing do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h. A maximum speed of 100 km/h is only appropriate if an oscillation damper is used and the permissible gross trailer weight does not exceed the vehicle's curb weight.

For trailers with low driving stability and caravan trailers, the use of an oscillation damper is strongly recommended.

If the trailer starts snaking, drive more slowly, do not attempt to correct the steering and brake sharply if necessary.

When driving downhill, drive in the same gear as if driving uphill and drive at a similar speed. Adjust tire pressure to the value specified for full load.

### Trailer stability assist

If the system detects snaking movements, engine power is reduced and the vehicle / trailer combination is selectively braked until the snaking ceases. While system is working keep steering wheel as still as possible. The system operates from 60 km/h to 160 km/h.

**Warning**

In some situations, the system may not detect trailer snaking, e.g. when towing a light trailer. On slippery or poor surfaces, the system may not be able to prevent sudden trailer snaking.

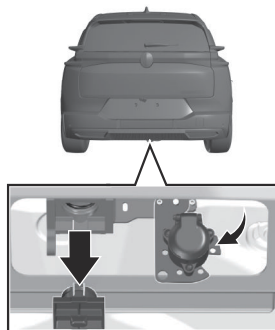
## TOWING HITCH

**Caution**

When operating without a trailer, remove the coupling ball bar.

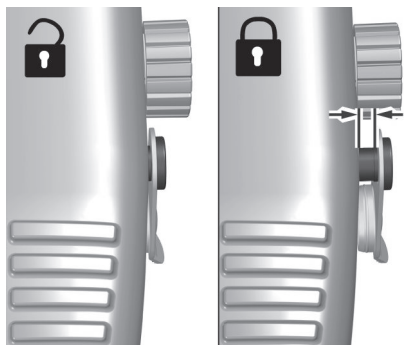
### Fitting the coupling ball bar

Stowage of the coupling ball bar with double load floor Lift the double load floor and stow the bag with the coupling ball bar underneath.

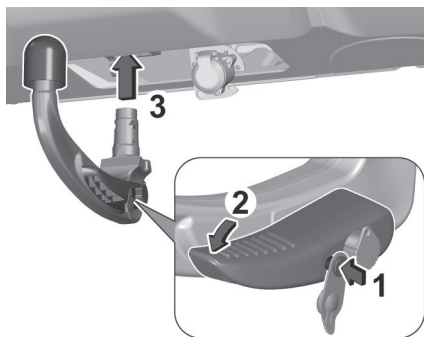


- Remove the sealing plug from the opening for the coupling ball bar and stow it.

### Inserting the coupling ball bar

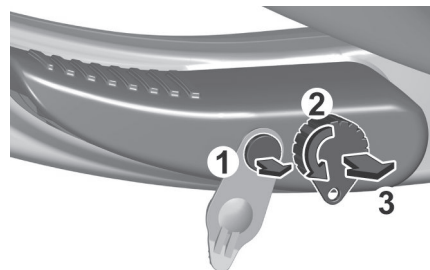


- Make sure the mechanism is unlocked (only red mark is visible).

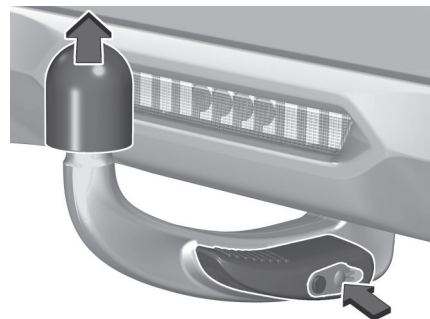


- Insert the coupling ball bar in the opening and push firmly upwards until it audibly engages.

The handle should snap upwards.



- Close the lock using the key by turning it anti-clockwise and pulling it.



- Clip the cap onto the lock.
- Remove the protective cover from the towball.

### Checking the correct installation of the coupling ball bar

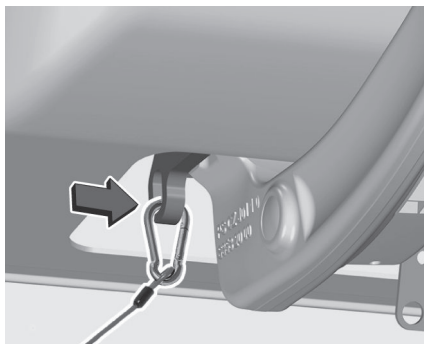
- The mechanism must be locked (green mark is fully visible).
- The lock must be closed.
- The key must be removed. The key can only be removed when the lock is closed.
- The cap must be clipped onto the lock
- The protective cover must be removed



#### Warning

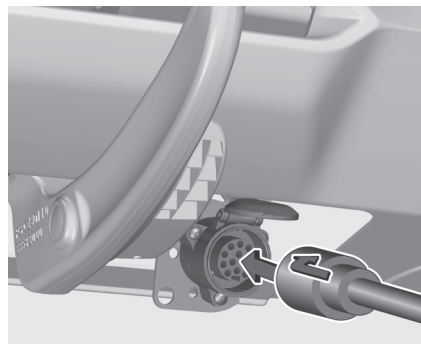
Towing a trailer is permitted only when a coupling ball bar is fitted correctly. If the coupling ball bar does not engage correctly, seek the assistance of a workshop.

### Eye for break-away stopping cable



- Attach the breakaway stopping cable to eye.

### Connecting the power socket



- Open the protective cover for the plug. Insert the plug and perform a clockwise quarter turn to lock it in place.

### Dismounting the coupling ball bar

- Grasp the power plug, perform an anticlockwise quarter turn and pull it out of the socket.
- Detach the breakaway stopping cable from the safety eye.
- Unclip the cap from the lock.
- Insert the key and open the lock by turning clockwise.
- Hold the towball with one hand and push on the lever to release it.
- Replace the protective cover on the towball and the sealing plug in the opening on the carrier.
- Replace the towball in its bag to protect it and stow it.

## Driving Tips

### LEGAL OBLIGATIONS

In order to comply with European GSR v2 regulations and for safety reasons, these functions cannot be partially or totally deactivated by the driver:

- Speed Limit Information in the Road signs recognition system.
- Active Safety Brake/Collision Risk Alert.
- Lane keeping assist.
- Driver Attention Warning.
- Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
- Monitor your environment and keep your hands on the wheel to be able to react to anything that may happen any time.
- Drive smoothly, anticipate the need for braking and maintain a longer safety distance, especially in bad weather.
- Stop the vehicle before performing operations that require sustained attention (e.g. settings).
- During long trips, take a break every 2 hours.

### IMPORTANT!



**Warning**  
**Never leave the engine running in a closed space without sufficient ventilation.** Internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases such as carbon monoxide.  
 Danger of poisoning and death!



### Warning

In very severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), let the engine run for 4 minutes before moving off, to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle (engine and gearbox).



### Warning

**Never drive with the parking brake applied.** Risk of overheating and damaging the braking system!



### Warning

**Never park the vehicle and never leave the engine running on a flammable surface (e.g. dry grass, dead leaves).** The vehicle exhaust system is very hot, even several minutes after the engine stops. Risk of fire!



### Warning

**Never drive on surfaces covered with vegetation (e.g. tall grass, accumulated dead leaves, crops, debris) such as a field, a country lane overgrown with bushes or a grassy verge.** This vegetation could come into contact with the vehicle's exhaust system or other systems which are very hot. Risk of fire!



### Warning

Make sure you do not leave any item in the passenger compartment which could act like a magnifying glass under the effect

of the sun's rays and cause a fire. Risk of fire or damage to interior surfaces!



### Warning

**Never leave the vehicle unattended, with the engine running.** If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the automatic gearbox into position **N** or **P**.

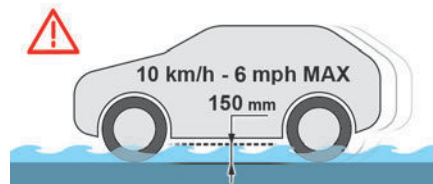


### Warning

**Never leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised.**

## ON FLOODED ROADS

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the internal combustion engine or electric motor, the gearbox and the electrical systems of the vehicle.



If the vehicle absolutely must drive through a flooded section of road:

- ▶ Check that the depth of the water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users.
- ▶ Deactivate the Stop & Start function.
- ▶ Drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h).

- ▶ Do not stop and do not switch off the engine. On leaving the flooded road, as soon as safety conditions allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads. If in doubt about the state of your vehicle, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

## NOISE (BEV)

### On the outside

Due to the vehicle's quiet operation when driving, the driver must pay particular attention. When maneuvering, the driver must always check the vehicle's immediate surroundings. At speeds of up to 19 mph (30 km/h), the pedestrian horn warns other road users of the vehicle's presence.



### Tip

#### Cooling the traction battery

The cooling fan comes on during charging to cool the on-board charger and the traction battery.

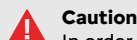
### On the inside

During use, you may hear certain perfectly normal noises specific to electric vehicles, such as:

- Traction battery relay when starting.
- Vacuum pump when braking.
- Vehicle tires or aerodynamics when driving.
- Jolting and knocking noise during hill starts.

# Introduction to Assistance Systems

## GENERAL INFORMATION



### Caution

In order to comply with European regulations and for safety reasons, these functions reactivate after each starting of the vehicle, even if previously deactivated:

- Speed Limit Information in Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) system
- Active Emergency Brake/Collision Risk Alert
- Lane Keeping Assist
- Driver Attention Alert
- Parking sensors



### Tip

Driving and maneuvering aids cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance from the driver. The driver must comply with the Highway Code, must remain in control of the vehicle in all circumstances and must be able to take back control of it at all times. The driver must adapt the speed to climatic conditions, traffic and the state of the road. It is the driver's responsibility to constantly monitor traffic conditions, assess the distance and relative speed of other vehicles, and anticipate their maneuvers before using the turn indicator and changing lanes. These systems do not make it possible to exceed the laws of physics.



### Tip

**Driving aids.** You should hold the steering wheel with both hands, always use the door and interior mirrors, always leave your feet close to the pedals and take a break every 2 hours.



### Tip

**Manoeuvring aids.** The driver must always check the surroundings of the vehicle before and during the whole manoeuvre, in particular using the mirrors.



### Tip

**Maintenance.** Clean the bumpers and door mirrors and the field of vision of the cameras regularly. When washing your vehicle at high pressure, direct the spray from at least 30 cm away from the radar, sensors and cameras.



### Caution

#### Mats/Pedal trims

The use of mats or pedal trims not approved by the Manufacturer may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter or cruise control.

To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- Ensure that the mat is secured correctly.
- Never fit one mat on top of another.



### Tip

#### Units of speed

Ensure that the units of speed displayed on the instrument panel (mph or km/h) are those for the country you are driving in. If this is not the case, when the vehicle is stationary, set the display to the required units of speed so that it complies with what is authorized locally. In case of doubt, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

## MULTIPLE DEACTIVATIONS



### Warning

Due to legal requirements, the system can only be deactivated in the vehicle personalization until the next time the ignition is reactivated. The system is automatically activated by default every time the electric motor is ready.

It is possible to deactivate several driver assistance functions simultaneously. This is done in two steps:

- First of all, the selection of all the functions that you want to deactivate.
- Secondly, the simultaneous deactivation of all these functions.

### Selection of functions



- ▶ Press this button on the dashboard to display the **ADAS** tabs.
- ▶ Select the **Functions** tab.



- Press this button to display the list of available functions.

- Select the functions that will be deactivated by a long press on the **ADAS** button at each start (e.g. Stop&Start, Lane Keeping Assist, Automatic Braking System (Active Safety Brake)).



- Press this button to return to the previous page.

The functions to deactivate are saved in the system.

### Deactivation of these functions



- Press and hold this button on the dashboard for 1 second.

All previously selected functions are deactivated until the vehicle is next restarted (confirmed by an audible signal).

## WARNING CHIMES

When a failure is detected in the sound module



Appears on the instrument panel, accompanied by a display message.  
No warning chime will sound, also not for the driver assistance systems.

## Detection Sensors



### RADAR

The vehicle is fitted with radars in each corner, contained within the bumpers. They provide distance and closing speed to the system and allow to detect incoming objects in front and behind the vehicle.



#### Warning

##### Radars

The operation of the radars, along with any associated functions, may be affected by the accumulation of dirt (e.g. Mud, ice), in poor weather conditions (e.g. Heavy rain, snow) by the masking of the detection zone with adhesive labels or other objects, or if the bumpers are damaged.

If the front or rear bumper is to be repainted, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop; certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radars.

Take care not to cover the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper correct operation of the associated systems.

## VIDEO CAMERAS



The vehicle is fitted with multiple cameras that enable monitoring of the road, the driver and the immediate surroundings during parking maneuvers.



#### Warning

##### Driving aids camera

This camera and its associated functions may be impaired or not work if the windshield area in front of the camera is dirty, misty, frosty, covered with snow, damaged or masked by a sticker.  
In humid and cold weather, demist the windshield regularly.

Poor visibility (e.g. Inadequate street lighting, heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall), dazzle (e.g. Headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light) can also impair detection performance.  
In the event of a windshield replacement, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop

to recalibrate the camera; otherwise, the operation of the associated driving aids may be disrupted.



### Tip

#### Other cameras

The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen or on the instrument panel may be distorted by the terrain. In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast. Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.



### Tip

The Driver Attention Assist system uses a camera placed on top of the steering column to monitor the driver for signs of distraction and somnolence.

## ULTRASONIC SENSORS

Ultrasonic sensors are fitted to the bumpers to detect obstacles at short range during parking maneuvers.



### Warning

#### Sensors

The operation of the sensors, as well as any associated functions, may be disrupted by noise pollution such as that emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills), by the accumulation of

snow or dead leaves on the road or in the event of damaged bumpers and mirrors. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.

A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensors' settings, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be distorted. The sensors do not systematically detect obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences). Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or may no longer be detected during the manoeuvre. Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.

## STEERING WHEEL WITH HANDS ON DETECTION



### Tip

The steering wheel has built-in sensors to detect whether both hands are holding the steering wheel. This impacts the function of several systems e.g. Lane Keeping Assist.

## Vehicle Stability Assistance

### ANTI-SLIP REGULATOR



### Tip

For more information, refer to the **General Information on the Advanced**

### driving assistance systems (ADAS) and Detection Sensors.

Anti-slip regulation (or traction control) optimizes traction by using engine braking and by applying the brakes on the driving wheels to avoid one or more wheels spinning. It also enhances the vehicle's directional stability. If there is a difference between the vehicle's trajectory and the path desired by the driver, the dynamic stability control system automatically uses engine braking and the brakes on one or more wheels to return the vehicle to the desired path, within the limits of the laws of physics. These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started.



These systems are activated in the event of a problem with grip or trajectory (confirmed by this warning light flashing on the instrument panel).



### Warning

#### ASR/DSC

These systems enhance safety during normal driving, but should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed. It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions. Correct operation of these systems depends on compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations relating to the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic

components, as well as the assembly and repair procedures provided by dealers. In order to ensure that these systems remain effective in wintry conditions, the use of snow or all-season tyres is recommended. All four wheels must be fitted with tyres approved for your vehicle. All tyre specifications are listed on the tyre/paint label. For more information on **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

### Fault



In the event of a fault, this warning light illuminates on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Seek the assistance of a workshop.

## ELECTRONIC STABILITY CONTROL (ESC)



### Tip

For more information, refer to the **General Information on the Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS) and Detection Sensors**.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tire grip. As soon as the vehicle starts to swerve (understeer / oversteer), engine output is reduced and the wheels are braked individually. ESC operates in combination with the traction control system. It prevents the driven wheels from spinning.

The traction control system is a component of the ESC.

The traction control system improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tire grip, by preventing the driven wheels from spinning.

As soon as the driven wheels start to spin, engine output is reduced and the wheel spinning the most is braked individually. This considerably improves the driving stability of the vehicle on slippery road surfaces.



- Extinguishes once ESC and traction control become operational after each engine start.
- Flashes when ESC or traction control operate.

After reconnecting the vehicle battery, the system needs a recalibration by driving a short distance.



### Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Adapt speed to the road conditions.



ESC and traction control system can be deactivated in the vehicle personalization in the Info Display.

► Press to open the ADAS menu.

A status message appears in the cluster when ESC and traction control system are deactivated.

ESC and traction control system can be reactivated in the vehicle personalization on the cluster, by applying the brake or in the case

that the vehicle is driven faster than 31 mph (50 km/h).



- Extinguishes once ESC and traction control are reactivated.
- Both systems reactivate on the following ignition cycle.

### Fault



- Illuminates continuously, accompanied by a message in the cluster in case of fault.
- The system is not operational.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

## Collision Avoidance System



### Tip

For more information, refer to the **General Information on the Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS) and Detection Sensors**.

This system is designed to reduce the likelihood and severity of collisions by :

- Warning the driver of an impending collision with another vehicle, pedestrian or other obstacle.
- Reducing the vehicle's speed.
- Assisting the driver in case of a collision.

**Warning**

This system does not replace the need for driver vigilance. This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety. It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor traffic conditions in accordance with applicable driving regulations.

The system includes three main functions :

- Forward Collision Warning
- Active Emergency Brake
- Emergency Braking Assist

**Tip**

The system can detect cyclists and motorcyclists. It may also react to animals. Smaller animals (smaller than 0.5 m) and objects may not get detected.

## FORWARD COLLISION WARNING (FCW)

**Tip**

For more information, refer to the **General Information on the Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS) and Detection Sensors**.

The forward collision warning warns the driver if there is a risk of collision with the vehicle ahead, with a cyclist or a pedestrian.

**Warning**

Forward collision warning is just a warning system and does not apply the brakes. When approaching a vehicle ahead too rapidly, there may not be enough time to avoid a collision. The driver accepts full responsibility for the appropriate following distance based on traffic, weather and visibility conditions. The complete attention of the driver is always required while driving. The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes.

**Operation**

Depending on the collision risk detected by the system and the alert trigger threshold chosen by the driver, different levels of alert may be triggered and displayed on the instrument panel.

The system takes into account the vehicle dynamics, the difference speed of the own vehicle and the object identified for the collision risk, and the operation of the vehicle (e.g. actions on the pedals, steering wheel) to trigger the alert at the most relevant moment.



(orange)

**Level 1:** visual alert only, warning that the preceding vehicle is very close.

The message **"Vehicle close"** is displayed.



(red)

**Level 2:** visual and audible alert, warning that a collision is imminent.

The message **"Brake!"** is displayed.



**Level 3:** a micro-braking may be given, confirming the risk of collision (optional).

**Tip**

It is disabled automatically at lower speeds.

**Tip**

If you select **"Far"** in the touch screen, then the system warns sooner. This increases the safety but also increases the amount of alerts if the legal safety distance is not kept. To reduce the alert occurrence, you can change the setting to either of the other two.

**Caution**

It is possible that collision warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified. The driver must always stay in control of the vehicle and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

**Activation**

Depending on the vehicle configuration and the detected objects, there are several operational speed ranges.

Forward collision warning operates up to 80 km/h (50 mph) when a pedestrian or a cyclist has been detected. Forward collision warning operates from 8 km/h (5 mph) up to vehicle maximum speed when a vehicle has been detected.

## Selecting the alert sensitivity



- In the **ADAS** touch screen application, select **Functions>Automatic Braking System**.
- Select one of the 3 preset thresholds: "Far", "Medium" or "Near".

The chosen setting will be memorized when the ignition has been switched off. The alert sensitivity will vary based on selected alert setting.

## Deactivation



The system can only be deactivated with the vehicle at a standstill by deactivating the Active Emergency Braking system in the ADAS menu.

## System Limitations

Forward collision warning is designed to warn on vehicles, cyclists and pedestrians, but may react also to other objects.

The system performance may be degraded or not available in the following cases:

- driving on winding or hilly roads
- driving during nighttime
- weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow
- the sensor in the windshield is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt etc.
- the windshield is damaged or affected by foreign objects, e.g. stickers

## ACTIVE EMERGENCY BRAKING (AEB)



**Tip**  
For more information, refer to the **General Information on the Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)**.

Active Emergency Braking can help to reduce the damage and injury from crashes with vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists directly ahead, when the driver does not actively take action either by manual braking or by steering. Before the active emergency braking applies, the driver will be warned by the forward collision alert. The feature uses various inputs (e.g. camera sensor, radar sensor) to calculate the probability of a frontal collision.



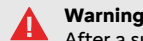
This warning light flashes (for approximately 10 seconds) as soon as the function applies the vehicle's brakes.

During the flashing time, the function is not available.

With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, in the event of automatic emergency braking, keep the brake pedal depressed, also after a complete stop is reached, to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.



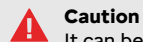
**Tip**  
As soon as the system detects a potential collision, it prepares the braking circuit. This may cause a slight noise, stop the ventilation of the air conditioning and a slight sense of deceleration.



**Warning**  
After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle. The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes and steer to avoid collisions. The driver can override the automatic emergency braking by turning strongly the steering wheel and / or by pressing firmly the gas pedal. To ensure the pedal travel is uninhibited, there must be no feet or mats in the area of the pedals.



**Tip**  
In case the detection is degraded or temporarily unavailable by environment conditions, then a driver indication is not displayed because a driver action is not requested.



**Caution**  
It can be dangerous to drive if the brake lights are not in perfect working order.

**Caution**

The driver must not overload the vehicle (keep within the GVW and GTW limits and load height limits for roof bars).

**Tip**

Below a speed of 50 km/h (30 mph), automatic emergency braking may slow down the vehicle to a complete stop. Automatic emergency braking may reduce the speed by a maximum of 50 km/h (30 mph).

**Activation/Deactivation**

Depending on version, the system is automatically active by default every time the engine is started, even if it was deactivated during the last ignition cycle.



The system can be deactivated in the ADAS menu

Depending on version, deactivation is only possible at a standstill.



Will illuminate in the cluster when the system is disabled.

In any situations with ignition on where automatic braking presents a risk, deactivating the system via the driving aids touch screen application is recommended, for instance:

- Carrying long objects on roof bars.
- Using an automatic car wash.

- Performing any maintenance (e.g. changing a wheel, working inside the engine compartment).
- Placing the vehicle on a rolling bench in a workshop.
- Towing the vehicle.
- Following a damage of the windshield close to the detection camera.
- Following a front bumper impact and deformation.
- When attaching an unbraked trailer.
- When driving with snow chains.

**Functionality**

Depending on the vehicle configuration and the detected objects, there are several operational speed ranges.

The system includes the following functions:

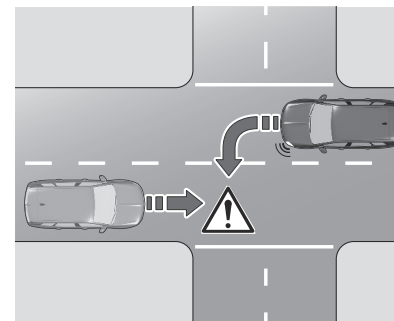
- forward collision warning
- emergency brake assist
- automatic braking
- Forward collision warning

**Turning maneuver**

The system may also operate during a turning maneuver when detecting another vehicle, a motorcyclist or a pedestrian.

**Crossing the road with another vehicle**

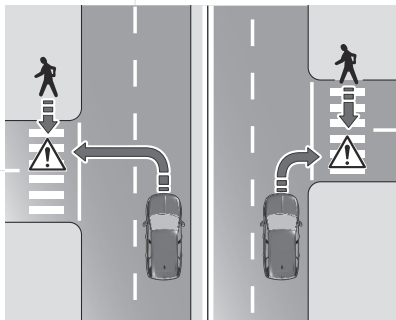
On vehicles equipped with radar sensor and front camera: The system may operate when the vehicle is turning and detects another vehicle on the adjacent lane, approaching from the opposite direction, if the following conditions are met:



- the corresponding turn light is activated
- the vehicle is about to cross the driving path of another vehicle
- the vehicle speed is between 8 km/h (5 mph) and 25 km/h (15 mph)
- a collision with another vehicle is probable  
In addition, the system also reacts on motorcyclists.

**Crossing the road with a pedestrian**

The system may operate when the vehicle is turning left or right and detects a crossing pedestrian, if the following conditions are met:

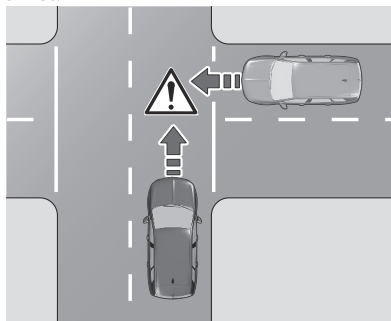


- the pedestrian is crossing in front of the vehicle
- the pedestrian can clearly be detected by the sensors
- the scenery is detectable by the sensors, e.g. brightness, contrast versus background
- the vehicle speed is between 8 km/h (5 mph) and 25 km/h (15 mph)

In addition, the system also reacts on cyclists.

### Crossing Maneuver

The system may operate when a visible vehicle is crossing your path, if the following conditions are met:



- the visible vehicle is crossing your path and can clearly be detected by the sensors
- the speed of the crossing vehicle is below 65 km/h (40 mph)
- the vehicle's speed is below 65 km/h (40 mph)

### Operating Conditions

Active emergency braking only works when:

- the brake system is operational
- Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control are activated
- the seat belts of the front seats and depending on version of the rear seats are fastened
- constant speed on unwinding roads

Active emergency braking is automatically deactivated in the following cases:

- a spare wheel with smaller diameter is detected
- a fault with the brake pedal switch or with the left or right brake light is detected
- a fault in the active emergency braking system, in the electronic or in the brake system is detected
- a severe crash, e.g., with airbag deployment was detected

### System Limitations

The system performance may be degraded or not available in the following cases:

- sensor covered with snow, ice, slush, mud or dirt
- windshield damaged or smeared, with blurred view or covered with foreign items, e.g. stickers
- damaged or deformed front bumper or front bumper covered with foreign items, e.g. stickers
- radar unit is out of its regular position resulting from an impact of the front bumper
- front camera out of its regular position
- automatic braking not available, e.g. brake discs cooling going on
- brake pedal continuously used for a long time, e.g. on a long downhill road
- winding or hilly roads
- system initialization process after battery disconnection
- dazzling light, e.g. caused by the sun or artificial illumination is shining directly into the camera lens

- adverse environmental conditions, e.g. rain, fog, or snow
- vehicle ahead creating road spray

After an impact or when damages are visible have the vehicle checked by a workshop.

The system performance may be affected by:

- Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control in progress
- vehicle battery voltage out of range
- wet road reflecting lights
- close vehicles ahead
- tractors, muddy vehicles or vehicles with a trailer
- banked roads
- poor lighting conditions
- sudden lighting changes
- vehicle modifications, e.g. tires
- vehicle overloaded

The driver must not overload neither the load compartment nor the roof of the vehicle. If a sensor is covered, a message is displayed indicating that the camera sensors have to be cleaned.

If the system is temporarily affected and no driver action is required, no message is displayed.

Complete attention is always required while driving, and be ready to take action to avoid crashes.

We recommend to deactivate the system in the vehicle personalization in the following cases:

- when towing a trailer or caravan
- when carrying long objects on roof bars or a roof rack
- when the vehicle is being towed

- when performing any maintenance with ignition on
- when the vehicle is fitted with snow chains
- when a spare wheel is fitted that is smaller than the other wheels
- before using an automatic car wash
- before placing the vehicle on a rolling road in a workshop
- if the windshield has been damaged close to the camera
- If the front bumper has been damaged or deformed
- If the radar unit is out of its regular position resulting from an impact on the front bumper
- if the brake lights are not working

#### Fault



- Illuminates on the cluster, accompanied by a message indicating that the sensors or the camera may be covered. If the issue isn't resolved after cleaning the sensors, consult a workshop.
- Illuminates if a fault has been detected.
- Illuminates if the infotainment system has an issue.



May illuminate in case of serious fault. If cycling the ignition doesn't solve the issue, consult a workshop.



Illuminates in combination with the Emergency Brake telltale when a seatbelt is unfastened.

The system is deactivated until the corresponding seatbelt is fastened.

## AUTOMATIC BRAKING



#### Tip

For more information, refer to the **General Information on the Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS) and Detection Sensors.**

Just before the imminent collision, this function automatically applies limited braking to reduce the impact speed of the collision or prohibit a crash.



- Flashes when automatic braking is applied.
- Flashes for a few seconds after automatic braking is finished.

#### During this time, active emergency braking cannot be applied if there is a risk of a further collision.

Below a speed of 50 km/h (30 mph), emergency automatic braking may slow down the vehicle to a complete stop. If the speed exceeds this limit, automatic braking reduces the speed.

However, the driver must apply the brake to come to a complete stop.

If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, automatic braking is maintained for a certain time. **Keep the brake pedal depressed to prevent the vehicle from starting off again.**

Cruise control will be deactivated when an automatic braking occurs.

In some cases, the driver may wish to override the automatic braking provided by the active emergency braking system. Firmly apply the accelerator pedal or firmly turn the steering wheel to override the automatic braking if the situation and the surroundings permit.

### **Warning**

Do not rely on the system to brake the vehicle. Active emergency braking will not brake automatically outside of its operating speed range.

## EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST

### **Tip**

For more information, refer to the **General Information on the Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)**.

If the driver brakes, but not sufficiently to avoid a collision, this system will supplement the braking. This assistance will only be provided if the driver presses the brake pedal. Emergency brake assist will automatically disengage when the brake pedal is released.

## AUTOMATIC POST-COLLISION BRAKING

### **Tip**

For more information, refer to the **General Information on the Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** and **Detection Sensors**.

If an accident is detected, the vehicle requests automatic post collision braking. The goal of this function is to reduce the risk of further collisions if the driver does not react. The system operates on frontal, lateral and rear collision. The automatic post collision braking is not operational if the capability of the vehicle to trigger and execute the automatic post collision braking is unavailable, as it can occur in destructive accidents or in other specific accident scenarios. It is possible to override the automatic braking by pressing the accelerator pedal.

### System Limitations

The system operates if the following conditions are fulfilled:

- airbags or seat belt pretensioners have been deployed by the collision
- braking system and electric functions remain continuously operational during and after collision
- driver has not depressed brake pedal.

### Fault



Or



Illuminates continuously on the cluster, accompanied by a message on the cluster and a warning chime.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

## WRONG PEDAL PREVENTION (WPP)

### **Tip**

For more information, refer to the **General Information on the Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** and **Detection Sensors**.

This function could prevent or reduce damages in case of a strong press on the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal if an obstacle is detected in front or behind the vehicle by performing emergency braking. This function, operating at a standstill or moving at very low speed, uses the parking sensors for detection.

### Operation

The function brakes if:

- While in Drive mode, accelerator is quickly and strongly pressed and a target is detected by front sensors.
- or
- While in reverse gear, accelerator is quickly and strongly pressed and a target is detected by rear sensors.

### Functionality



When the function is activated and emergency brake is started. It is signaled by the display of a message including this warning pictogram and an audio signal.

The emergency brake is stopped and the active state is left, if the brake pedal is pressed. If the system is active and the driver does not press the brake pedal to deactivate the feature within 90s, Electronic park brake (EPB) is engaged automatically and the indication **"Parking Brake Applied"** is displayed.



The function can be deactivated in the ADAS touch screen application (selected again after ignition cycle).



Deselection by the driver of the WPP system is indicated by this indicator light on the instrument panel coming on and the display of a message.

### Operating Limits

The system may not operate under specific circumstances/limitations such as for example:

- Sensor covered in mud, dirt, ice, leaves from the road
- External coverage of the vehicle surface near the parking sensors (e.g. stickers)
- Damage of the vehicle surface near the parking sensors
- New coating of the vehicle surface near the parking sensors
- Adverse environmental conditions (e.g. heavy rain, snow or fog).
- Vehicle ahead creating massive air disturbances
- Heavily loaded trunk
- Very high slope
- Blocked parking sensors
- Very small or thin obstacles

- Extreme temperature changes
- Attached bicycle carrier or trailer
- Objects surfaces that reflects or absorbs ultrasonic waves



#### Caution

The system is deactivated in the rear when trailer is attached.



#### Caution

Any damage of the vehicle surface near the parking sensors should be repaired in a qualified workshop to preserve full performance.



#### Warning

The system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance and controls from the driver. The driver remains responsible for their driving by monitoring their surroundings. The driver is responsible for correct use of the brake and accelerator pedals, as well as the gear selector. Never intentionally attempt to drive toward an obstacle to test the system's function, as this is extremely dangerous.



#### Warning

The system can only work properly in its physical limits.

### Fault



In the even of a malfunction, this warning illuminate on the instrument panel, accompanied by the

display of a message and an audio signal. In case of sensor fault in one direction the system is not deactivated for the other direction. Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a malfunction when engaging reverse gear, during reversing or when the driver attempts to activate the system, the message **"Parking Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual"** appears on the instrument panel accompanied by an audio signal if the sensor is masked. This is a normal behavior, which does not require the support of a qualified workshop. In this case, stop the vehicle and check if the parking sensors are covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing. The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

## Braking Performance Assistance Systems

### ANTI-LOCK BRAKE SYSTEM (ABS) WITH ELECTRONIC BRAKE FORCE DISTRIBUTION (EBFD)



#### Tip

For more information, refer to the **General Information on the Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS) and Detection Sensors.**

These systems enhance the vehicle's stability and handling during braking, and enable greater

control while cornering, particularly on poor or slippery road surfaces.

ABS prevents wheel locking in the event of emergency braking.

Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) manages overall braking pressure on each individual wheel.

- **When braking in an emergency, depress the pedal very firmly and maintain this pressure.**



#### Tip

Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.



The steady illumination of this warning light signals that there is a fault with the ABS.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at a moderate speed.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.



This warning light, when lit together with the **STOP** and ABS warning lights, accompanied by a message and an audible signal, indicates an EBFD malfunction.

#### You must stop the vehicle.

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.



#### Warning

When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.



#### Warning

##### After an impact

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

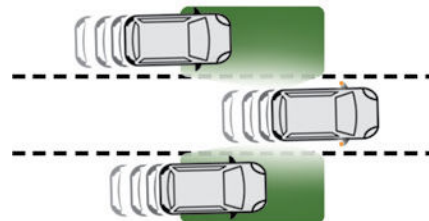
## Visibility Enhancement Assistance System

### LONG-DISTANCE BLIND SPOT MONITORING



#### Tip

For more information, refer to the **General Information on the Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS) and Detection Sensors.**



This system warns the driver of vehicles approaching rapidly from the rear in adjacent lanes (up to around 75 m) and of the presence

of a vehicle in the blind spots of their vehicle, using corner radars located in the rear bumper.



#### Tip

This system takes into account vehicles such as cars, lorries and motorcycles by monitoring the blind spots or areas hidden from the driver's field of vision.



A warning light appears in the door mirror on the side in question:

- **Steady**, immediately when another vehicle is in the blind spot or is approaching in an adjacent lane.
- **Flashing**, after about 1 second when the direction indicator is used.

#### Activation/Deactivation



It is configured in the **ADAS** touch screen application.

When starting the vehicle, the warning light comes on in each mirror to indicate that the system is activated.

**Tip**

The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towing device approved by The Manufacturer.

**Operating conditions**

- All vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes.
- When overtaking a vehicle, the speed difference is less than 9 mph (15 km/h).
- Traffic is flowing normally.
- Overtaking a vehicle over a certain period of time and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot.

**Operating limits**

No alert is triggered in the following conditions:

- presence of stationary objects (e.g. parked vehicles, safety rails, lampposts, signs).
- vehicles traveling in the opposite direction.
- if the rear bumper is damaged.

**Warning**

It is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified. This system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. Always check in the mirrors and look over your shoulders before changing lanes to avoid an accident.

In the event of repairing or repainting the rear bumper, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop; certain types of paint

could interfere with the operation of the radars.

**Fault**

If the event of a malfunction, this warning light illuminates on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

**Tip**

The system may be temporarily disturbed by certain weather conditions (e.g. heavy rain, hail or extreme temperature changes).

In particular, driving on a wet road or going from a dry to a wet area can cause false alerts (e.g. presence of a cloud of water droplets in the blind spot interpreted as a vehicle).

In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the radars are not covered by mud, ice or snow. Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors, or the detection zones on the rear bumper, with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper the correct operation of the system.

## Lane Centering Assistance System

### LANE KEEPING ASSIST (LKA)

**Tip**

For more information, refer to the **General Information on the Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS) and Detection Sensors.**

**Warning**

This system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

**Warning**

The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands so that they can maintain control when the conditions no longer allow the system to intervene (e.g. In the event that the central dividing line marking on the road surface disappears)

Lane keeping assist supports the driver to avoid unintended leaving of the lane. The front camera observes road edges, as well as the lane markings between which the vehicle is driving. If the vehicle approaches a road edge or a lane marking, the steering wheel is gently turned so that the vehicle turns back into the lane. The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel. Turn the steering wheel in same direction, if the system does not steer sufficiently. Turn the steering wheel gently into opposite direction, if a lane change is intended.

**Tip**

The driver can prevent the correction by firmly holding the steering wheel (e.g. during an emergency manoeuvre). The correction is interrupted immediately if the direction indicators are operated.



Flashes yellow on the cluster when the system steers to correct the trajectory of the vehicle. Lane keeping assist does not continuously steer the vehicle.

Unintended lane departure is not assumed by the system when the turn lights are operated and during few seconds after the turn lights have been switched off.

The system will inform the driver with a message and a chime if there is an ongoing correction for more than 10 seconds. If the driver is still unable to keep the vehicle in the lane, the correction interrupts after a short time.

A lane departure warning on the cluster alerts when the system cannot hold the vehicle within the lane and immediate driver action is required.

**Tip**

The system might be inactive if it detects lanes which are too narrow, too wide or too curved.

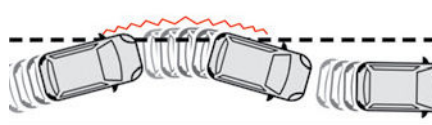
For a correct operation of the system, the following preconditions have to be fulfilled:

- vehicle speed must be between approx. 65 km/h (40 mph) and 180 km/h (112 mph)
- the turn lights are not activated

- the electronic stability control is activated and not in operation
- no plug is connected to the power outlet of the trailer hitch
- no dynamic driving, i.e. pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal
- lane boundaries can be clearly detected by the system
- no temporary spare wheel is used
- the vehicle is not driven in a tight corner
- no system fault is present which prevents corrections

Depending on version, only lane departure warning system is active, when a system fault is present, a spare wheel is used, Electronic Stability Control is not activated or e.g. a trailer is attached.

**This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.**

**Operating conditions****Tip**

The system performance may be affected by heavy curves and construction areas.

- Vehicle speed between 40 and 112 mph (65 and 180 km/h).
- Road marked with a central dividing line.
- Steering wheel held with both hands.

- Direction indicators off upon activation of the system.
- ESC system activated and operational.

**Warning**

The system helps the driver only if there is a risk of the vehicle unintentionally wandering from the lane it is being driven in. It does not manage the safe driving distance, vehicle speed or braking. The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands so that they can maintain control when the conditions no longer allow the system to intervene (e.g. in the event that the central dividing line marking on the road surface disappears).

**Activation**
**Warning**

Due to legal requirements, the system can only be deactivated in the vehicle personalization until the next time the ignition is reactivated. The system is automatically activated by default every time the engine is started.

Depending on version, the system is automatically active by default every time the engine is started, even if it was deactivated during the last ignition cycle.



The system can be activated in the vehicle personalization in the information display.



Extinguished if the system is activated.

## Deactivation



The system can be deactivated in the vehicle personalization in the Infotainment Display.

## Hands-Off

When hands-off driving is detected during a correction within a rolling interval of 180 seconds, the system intervenes:



Intervention 1: flashes until the end of the intervention.

Intervention 2: flashes and a warning chime sounds until the end of intervention but for at least one second.

Further interventions: continuous flashing and the warning chime sounds 10 seconds longer than the previous chime.

A lane departure warning on the cluster alerts when the system cannot hold the vehicle within the lane and immediate driver's action is required.

## System Limitations

The system performance may be affected by:

- covered camera by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windshield damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers
- heavy or unequally distributed loading
- close vehicles ahead
- banked roads
- winding or hilly roads
- poor lighting conditions

- sudden lighting changes
- dazzling light, e.g. caused by the sun or artificial illumination is shining directly into the camera lens
- adverse environmental conditions, e.g. heavy rain, fog, or snow
- vehicle modifications, e.g. tires
- wrong tire pressure
- roads with poor lane markings



### Tip

The system performance may be affected by heavy curves and construction areas.



### Warning

The system must be deactivated if the vehicle is being towed.

## Fault



In the event of a malfunction, these warning lights illuminate on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.



This warning light illuminates on the instrument panel with the message **"Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual"** if the sensor is masked.

This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop. In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera is covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing. The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

## Unavailability After Battery Reconnection

Lane Keeping Assist can be temporarily unavailable or inactive when the power supply of the vehicle is reconnected again.

## LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (LDW)



### Tip

For more information, refer to the **General Information on the Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS) and Detection Sensors**.

The lane departure warning system supports the driver to avoid unintended leaving of the lane. The front camera observes road edges, as well as the lane markings between which the vehicle is driving. If the vehicle crosses a road edge or a lane marking, the system warns the driver.

Unintended lane departure is not assumed by the system when the turn lights are operated and during few seconds after turn lights have been switched off.

No warning will be issued with a dynamic driving, i.e. pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal or heavy steering.



Rapidly flashes yellow when the system recognizes an unintended lane departure.

### Operating Conditions

For a correct operation of the system, the following preconditions have to be fulfilled:

- vehicle speed must be between approx. 65 km/h (40 mph) and 180 km/h (112 mph)
- the turn lights are not activated
- no dynamic driving, i.e. pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal
- lane boundaries can be clearly detected by the system
- the vehicle is not driven in a tight corner
- no system fault is present which prevents corrections

Deactivate the system when the vehicle is being towed.

#### Warning

This system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

#### Warning

The system helps the driver only if there is a risk of the vehicle unintentionally wandering from the lane it is being driven in. It does not manage the safe driving distance, vehicle speed or braking. The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands so that they can maintain control when the conditions no longer allow the system to intervene (e.g. in the event

that the central dividing line marking on the road surface disappears).

### Activation

#### Warning

Due to legal requirements, the system can only be deactivated in the vehicle personalization until the next time the ignition is reactivated. The system is automatically activated by default every time the engine is started.

Depending on version, the system is automatically active by default every time the engine is started, even if it was deactivated during the last ignition cycle.



The system can be activated in the vehicle personalization in the infotainment display.



Extinguished if the system is activated.

### Deactivation



The system can be deactivated in the vehicle personalization in the Infotainment Display.

### System Limitations

The system performance may be affected by:

- covered camera by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windshield damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers
- close vehicles ahead

- banked roads
- winding or hilly roads
- poor lighting conditions
- sudden lighting changes
- dazzling light, e.g. caused by the sun or artificial illumination is shining directly into the camera lens
- adverse environmental conditions, e.g. heavy rain, fog, or snow
- vehicle modifications, e.g. tires
- roads with poor lane markings

#### Tip

The system performance may be affected by heavy curves and construction areas.

### Fault



In the event of a malfunction, these warning lights illuminate on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.



This warning light illuminates on the instrument panel with the message **"Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual"** if the sensor is masked.

This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop. In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera is covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing. The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

## LANE POSITIONING ASSIST (LPA)



### Tip

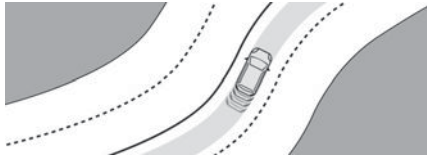
For more information, refer to the **General Information on the Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS) and Detection Sensors**.



### Warning

The system assists the driver in managing the steering, acceleration and braking within the limits of the laws of physics and the capabilities of the vehicle. Some road infrastructure elements or vehicles present on the road may not be properly seen or may be poorly interpreted by the camera, which may lead to an unexpected change in direction, a lack of steering correction and/or inappropriate management of the acceleration or braking.

Lane positioning assist is an enhancement of the lane keep assist system. The activated system observes the lane markings by using the camera located at the top of the windshield. It steers the vehicle inside the detected lane. The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.



Thus, the current position of the vehicle within the lane is kept.

This position is not necessarily the center of the lane.

In the case that the vehicle is driving at the outer edge of the lane, the system corrects the trajectory smoothly towards the center of the currently driven lane when a determined speed has been exceeded.

Again, the driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.



Illuminates in green when the vehicle is steered by the system. However, the control of the vehicle can be taken over at any time by the driver.

Therefore, the driver needs to apply some additional force when turning the steering wheel.

If the system detects that the driver is not holding the wheel firmly enough, it triggers a series of gradual alerts.



If the interruption takes too long, the system will be deactivated, the telltale extinguishes on the cluster.

The system has to be reactivated again by the driver. Lane positioning assist operates only in combination with adaptive cruise control.

## Required Preconditions

- Drive assist must be activated.
- The driver must hold the steering wheel.
- The turn lights are not activated.
- The Electronic Stability Control is activated and not in operation.
- No plug is connected to the power outlet of the trailer hitch.
- No dynamic driving is detected, i.e. pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Lane boundaries can be clearly detected by the system.
- No temporary spare wheel is used.
- The vehicle is not driven in a tight corner.
- No system fault is present which prevents corrections.

## Activation/Deactivation

### Activation



- ▶ Press successively until Drive Assist Mode is selected. The Drive Assist screen is displayed on the cluster.
- ▶ Press successively again until the mode to switch off assistance is selected.

## Pausing / suspending the system



### Tip

When using semi-automated lane change, setting the turn lights starts a semi-automated lane change maneuver.

Advanced lane keep assist may be paused or suspended in the following situations:

- The Electronic Stability Control is in operation or it has been deactivated.
- At least one of the lane markings is not detected by the system for several seconds. The system will be reactivated once the operating conditions are regained.
- The driver activates the turn lights and turns the steering wheel.
- Driving outside the lane limits.
- The steering wheel is held too tight or moved too dynamically.
- The brake pedal or the accelerator pedal is applied.
- The adaptive cruise control is paused.
- The road is too narrow or wide.
- The lateral acceleration in curves is too high

## System Limitations

The system performance may be affected by:

- covered camera by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windshield damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers
- close vehicles ahead
- banked roads
- winding or hilly roads
- poor lighting conditions
- sudden lighting changes

- dazzling light, e.g. caused by the sun or artificial illumination is shining directly into the camera lens
- adverse environmental conditions, e.g. heavy rain, fog, or snow
- vehicle modifications, e.g. tires
- roads with poor lane markings

A warning message may appear when the vehicle is traveling in a long straight lane on a smooth road surface even if the driver is holding the steering wheel properly. Deactivate the system if the system is disturbed by tar marks, shadows, road cracks, temporary or construction lane markings, or other road imperfections.



### Warning

Always keep your attention on the road and maintain proper vehicle position within the lane, otherwise vehicle damage, injury or death could occur. The system may not keep the vehicle in the lane or give an alert, even if a lane marking is detected. The steering of the system may not be sufficient to avoid a lane departure. The system may not detect hands-off driving due to external influences (road condition and surface, weather etc). The driver has full responsibility to control the vehicle and is always required to keep the hands on the steering wheel while driving. Using the system on slippery roads could cause loss of control of the vehicle and a crash. Switch the system off.

## Fault



Illuminate on the cluster or the HUD, accompanied by a message and a warning chime. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

## SEMI-AUTOMATIC LANE CHANGE (SALC)

(with Drive Assist 2.0)



### Tip

For more information, refer to the **General Information on the Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS) and Detection Sensors**.

This system assists the driver in changing lanes. To do this, it uses the camera located at the top of the windshield, the radar located at the front and the four angle radars fitted in the bumpers.



### Warning

The steering wheel is equipped with a hands-on detection system to avoid distraction on the part of the driver. For more information on the **Hands-on detection**, refer to the corresponding section.



### Warning

The system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. The driver remains responsible for their driving by monitoring their surroundings and keeping their hands

on the steering wheel. The driver must act promptly if they believe that the traffic conditions or the state of the road surface require their intervention, by moving the steering wheel to temporarily suspend system operation. Any intervention on the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal that causes the adaptive cruise control to be paused or suspended will also cause the system to deactivate.

### Selecting the System

For the system to be active, two requirements must be met:

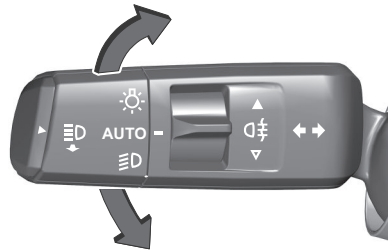
- **Drive Assist 2.0** must be activated in the **Functions** tab of the **ADAS** app
- **SALC** must be selected by pressing **ASSIST** on the steering wheel successively until **Drive Assist 2.0** is selected.

Once **SALC** is active and if the road the vehicle is currently driving on is eligible, **SALC** will allow automatic overtaking.

### Operating Conditions

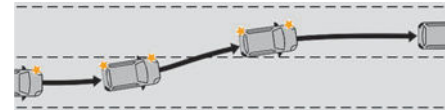
- Eligible roads: roads with separate carriageways with prohibited access for pedestrians and cyclists.
- The line separating the lanes must be clear enough to be identified by the system.
- The position and speed of other vehicles must enable the system to safely change lanes.
- Drive Assist Plus 2.0 activated.
- Lane positioning assist activated.
- Vehicle speed between 43 mph (70 km/h) and 112 mph (180 km/h).

### Activation/Deactivation



- Activate the direction indicator on the side corresponding to the lane change, whether or not passing the resistance point of the lighting control stalk.
- An "OK?" message will display on the cluster
- After checking the surroundings, press the **OK** button on the steering wheel to confirm the start of the lane change maneuver.
- The driver can regain control of the vehicle at any time:
  - by deactivating the direction indicator if the vehicle has not yet crossed the line.
  - by firmly holding the steering wheel.
  - by acting on the pedals.

For more information on the **Direction indicators**, refer to the corresponding section. The message "**Stay attentive**" is displayed as a reminder that the driver is still responsible for the manoeuvre.



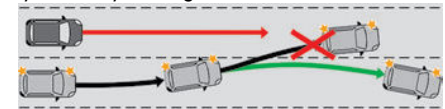
The system then proceeds with the vehicle's lane change. Once the manoeuvre has been carried out, the system is automatically deactivated and the lane positioning assist takes over. If the direction indicator has been set beyond the point of resistance, the driver must pull it back.

#### **i** Tip

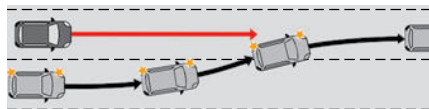
The driver must hold the steering wheel correctly. As soon as the semi-automatic lane change begins, the system directs the vehicle to the target lane by small actions on the steering to position it in the destination lane. You can feel the steering wheel moving.

### Interrupting the Lane Change

It is possible that while changing lane, the necessary conditions for the operation of the system may no longer be met.



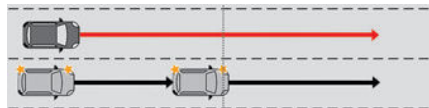
If this occurs before one of the wheels has crossed the line separating the two lanes, the system automatically returns the vehicle to its original lane (confirmed by the display of a maneuver cancellation message on the instrument panel or in the HUD and an audible signal). The system is then automatically deactivated.



If this occurs when the lane change has started, the system prompts the driver to immediately retake control of the vehicle (confirmed by the display of a message on the instrument panel or in the HUD and an audible signal), and the system is automatically deactivated.

### Refused Lane Change Request

When operating the direction indicator, if the necessary conditions are not met, the lines appear in orange on the instrument panel or in the HUD.



The system keeps the vehicle in the original lane. The system is deactivated and the semi-automatic lane change is not carried out.

## Parking and Reverse Operations Assistance System

### PARKING ASSIST



#### Tip

For more information, refer to the **General Information on the Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS) and Detection Sensors**.

### General information

The rear system is deactivated when a plug is connected to the power outlet of the trailer hitch.



#### Warning

The driver bears full responsibility for the parking manoeuvre. Always check the surrounding area when driving backwards or forwards while using parking assist system.

### Front-rear parking assist

The front-rear parking assist measures the distance between the vehicle and obstacles in front and behind the vehicle. It informs and warns the driver by giving audible signals and display indication.



The system operates with ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear and front bumper.

### Activation

(Depending on country)



The system can be activated in the ADAS app on the Infotainment Display.

When a forward gear has been engaged, the front parking assist is activated, as soon as an obstacle is detected in the front and the speed of the vehicle is below 10 km/h.

When the reverse gear has been engaged, the rear parking assist and the front parking assist are activated.

After engaging the reverse gear, an audible signal is given from the rear speakers and a display indication will be shown. If no audible signal is given, the display indication is not shown or a warning message appears, the system has a failure.

### Deactivation

(Depending on country)



The system can be deactivated in the ADAS app on the Infotainment Display.

The rear parking assist is switched off when reverse gear is disengaged.

### Indication



Flashes, accompanied by an audible signal as soon as an obstacle is detected

The interval between the sounds becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to that obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 30 cm, the sound is continuous. Audible signals are given via front or rear loudspeakers depending on which detected obstacle is nearest to the vehicle. No audible signals are given:

- if the vehicle stops for more than 3 seconds and if the obstacle is not in the red (closest) zone
- if the automatic transmission is in **P** position
- if no further obstacles are detected

An audible signal is not given if the sound has been muted or if the display of the rear view camera indicated on the Info Display has been switched off.

Additionally, the distance to obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the central screen



Illuminates when an obstacle is very close

### Muting the sound / closing the display indication



Flashes even if the audio signal is muted or the camera display closed

The muting will be disabled as soon as the vehicle exceeds 10 km/h. The sound will be active again when the speed is below 10 km/h (6 mph).

### System limitations



Illuminate in case of fault or heavy interference (e.g. noisy environment), accompanied by a message and a warning chime.



#### Tip

Make sure that the front number plate is properly mounted, vertically and horizontally centered and the sensors are firmly in place. The performance of the parking assist will be reduced if the license

plate is bent or a license plate support is used.



#### Warning

Under certain circumstances, various reflective surfaces on objects or clothing as well as external noise sources may cause the system to fail to detect obstacles. Special attention must be paid to low obstacles, which can damage the lower part of the bumper.



#### Caution

In the case of a severe failure of the vehicle with the need to stop the vehicle, the system is deactivated. In the case of a gearbox failure, the parking assist system is not active, when reverse gear is engaged. In the case of a sound of loudspeaker failure, the audible signals may not be given. The performance of the system can be reduced when the sensors are covered, e.g. by ice or snow. If a sensor is covered, a message is displayed indicating that the sensors have to be cleaned.

The performance of the parking assist system may be limited or the functionality

may not be available at all if  illuminates or if the image shown on the Information Display is frozen or if the screen is black.



#### Caution

The performance of the parking assist system can be reduced due to heavy loading.

Special conditions apply if there are taller vehicles in the vicinity (e.g. off-road vehicles, mini vans, vans). Object identification and correct distance indication in the upper part of these vehicles cannot be guaranteed. Objects with a very small reflection cross-section, e.g. objects of narrow size or soft materials, may not be detected by the system.

Parking assist systems do not detect objects outside the detection range, e.g. below the bumper or underneath the vehicle. During a reverse parking maneuver, the system does not consider a mounted coupling ball bar. The driver has to consider this additional length.



#### Tip

It is possible that the sensor detects a non-existing object caused by echo disturbance from external acoustic noise or mechanical misalignments (sporadic false warnings may occur).

Make sure that the front number plate is properly mounted (not bent and no gaps to the bumper on the left or right side) and the sensors are firmly in place. The performance of the parking assist may be reduced if the license plate is bent or a license plate support is used.

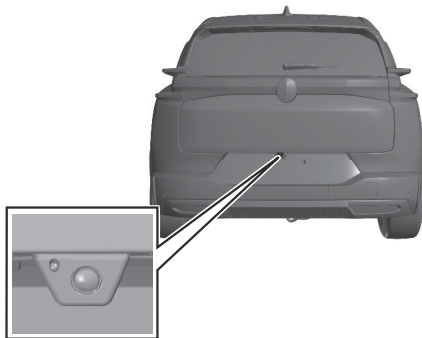
Low curbs and surface irregularities, e.g. on construction zones, are not detected by the system. The driver accepts responsibility.

## REAR VIEW CAMERA (RVC)



### Tip

For more information, refer to the **General Information on the Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS) and Detection Sensors**.



The rear view camera assists the driver when reversing by displaying a view of the area behind the vehicle. It allows views of the vehicle's surroundings to be displayed as a nearly 180° picture in the Info Display, like a bird's eye view.



### Warning

The rear view camera does not replace driver vision. Note that objects that are outside the camera's field of view and the parking assist sensors, e.g. below the bumper or underneath the vehicle, are not displayed. Do not reverse or park the vehicle using only the rear view camera.

Always check the surrounding of the vehicle before and during driving.

The system uses:

- rear view camera, mounted above the rear number plate
- ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear bumper

The screen in the Info Display is divided into three parts:

- On the right side, there is a view from above the vehicle.
- The middle part consists of a contextual view.
- The left side consists of the view selection as well as the settings menu.

The parking sensors complete the information on the view from above the vehicle.

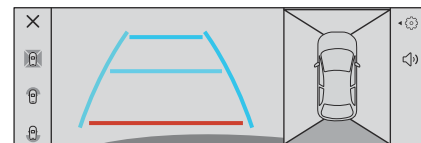
The area displayed by the rear view camera is limited. Displayed images may be further or closer than they appear.

The system automatically selects the best view to display according to the information from the parking sensors. The state of the system is not kept in memory when the ignition is switched off.

### Activation

The rear view camera is activated when the reverse gear is engaged. It can also be activated manually in the Driver Assist menu.

## Functionality



Different views can be selected in the left part of the display.

Change the type of view at any time during a maneuver by selecting the required view from the view selection in the left part of the Info Display:

- Standard view
- 180° view

The display is immediately updated with the type of view selected.

Using the camera, the vehicle's close surroundings are recorded during low speed maneuvers. An image from above the vehicle in its close surroundings is created in real time (on the side of the screen), as the vehicle progresses.

This view makes it easier to align the vehicle when parking and to perceive nearby obstacles. It is automatically deleted if the vehicle remains stationary for too long.

### Standard view

The area behind the vehicle is displayed in the screen. The vertical lines represent the width of the vehicle with mirrors unfolded. The direction of the lines changes with the steering angle. The first horizontal line represents a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of vehicle's rear bumper. The upper horizontal lines represent distances of about 1 m and 2 m. This view is displayed automatically or can be chosen from the view selection. Trajectory lane of the vehicle is shown in accordance with the steering angle.

### Settings menu

The settings menu allows to adjust the following settings:

- volume of the audible signal

### 180° view

The 180° view facilitates reversing out of a parking bay, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists. This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete maneuver.

### Zoom View

The rear view camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the maneuver in order to reconstruct a view from above the rear or the front of the vehicle in its near surroundings. An image from above the vehicle in its close surroundings is created as the vehicle progresses. Thus, the vehicle can be maneuvered around obstacles nearby. Zoom view cannot be manually selected. It is automatically activated if the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is approx. 60-80 cm.

The automatic display of the zoom view can be disabled in the Info Display:



► Press to access the ADAS menu



► Press to access the settings  
► Press Activate View Adaptation

The setting is memorized when the ignition is switched off.

### Deactivation

The rear view camera is deactivated when:

- driving faster than 12 km/h (6 mph) in a forward direction
- by pressing the icon X in the left upper corner in the Info Display.

### System limitations



#### Caution

For optimal operation of the system, it is important to keep the lens of the camera, which is located between the number plate lights, always clean. The rear view camera can be cleaned by a washer nozzle which is automatically activated when the rear window washer is operating. To wipe away water drops from the lens, use a soft cloth. Do not clean the lens with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

The rear view camera may not operate properly when:

- surrounding is dark
- sun or beam of headlights is shining directly into camera lenses
- weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow
- camera lenses blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt. The rear camera can be cleaned by activating the rear window washer. Rear window wiper and washer
- the tailgate will be opened
- vehicle is electrically connected to a trailer, bicycle carrier, etc.
- vehicle had a rear end accident
- extreme temperature changes

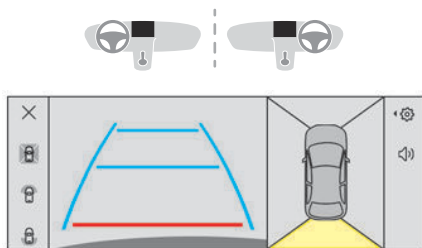
## SURROUND VISION



#### Tip

For more information, refer to the **General Information on the Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS) and Detection Sensors.**

This system allows you to view your vehicle's close surroundings on the touch screen using cameras, located at the front and rear of the vehicle, as well as under the door mirrors.



The screen is divided into 4 parts with two side menus, a contextual view and a view from above the vehicle in its close surroundings. The parking sensors supplement the information in the view from above the vehicle. Depending on the view angle chosen in the left-hand side menu, the system provides specific visual assistance in particular driving conditions, such as entering a blind intersection or maneuvering in areas with reduced visibility. Different contextual views are available for the rear or for the front:

- Automatic zoom view.
- Standard view.
- Panoramic view.

Depending on the context, the system chooses the best view to display (standard or automatic zoom).

The view type can be changed at any time during the maneuver.

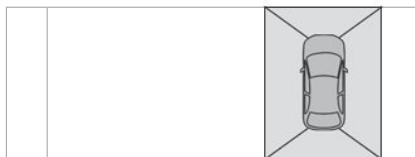
The system status is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

## Operating Principle

### Reconstructed view

The cameras are activated and a reconstruction of a view from above your vehicle in its close surroundings is displayed on the touch screen.

### Live view



The front, rear and side views automatically appear in the view from above the vehicle. It is also possible to display any live view by selecting the corresponding zone. The front view can be selected in forward gear up to 10 mph (16 km/h).

**i Tip**  
Installing the very cold climate screen can alter the image transmitted by the front camera.

## Settings

In the side menu:



This window allows to carry out the following operations:

- adjust the volume of the audible signal.

- adjust the brightness.
- adjust the contrast.
- trig the camera washing (depending on equipment).



This button allows to mute/unmute the audible signal.

## Activation/Deactivation

### Automatic

With the rear camera, engine running and vehicle stationary, rear vision is displayed automatically if reverse gear is engaged. With the front camera, engine running and speed below 10 mph (16 km/h), rear vision is displayed automatically if a gear is engaged.

### Manual



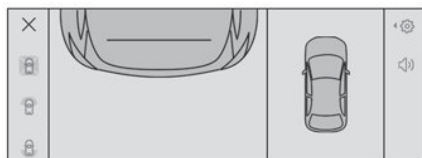
- In the **ADAS** touch screen application, select **Functions>Panoramic Camera**

The system is deactivated:

- automatically for the rear, when changing out of reverse gear.
- automatically for the front, above approximately 10 mph (16 km/h).

- by pressing the cross in the top left-hand corner of the touch screen.

### Automatic zoom view



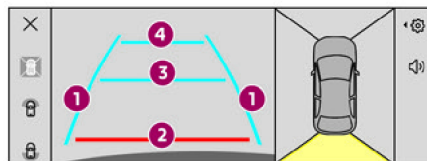
The rear camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the maneuver in order to create a view from above the rear of the vehicle in its close surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be maneuvered around nearby obstacles. Using the sensors located on the rear bumper, the automatic zoom view is displayed when approaching an obstacle at the red line (less than 30 cm) during the maneuver. This view is only available automatically.



#### Tip

Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are. It is important to monitor the sides of the vehicle during the maneuver, using the mirrors. Parking sensors also provide additional information about the area around the vehicle.

### Standard view



Depending on the context, the area behind or in front of your vehicle is displayed on the screen. The blue lines (at the rear)/orange lines (at the front) **1** represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes according to the position of the steering wheel. The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the rear or front bumper; the two blue lines (at the rear)/orange lines (at the front) **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m respectively.

This view is available automatically or by selection in the left-hand side menu.

### Panoramic View



The rear or front panoramic view allows you to leave a parking space by anticipating the arrival of vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists. This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete maneuver. This view is only available by selection in the left-hand side menu.

### REAR CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT



#### Tip

For more information, refer to the **General Information on the Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS) and Detection Sensors.**



#### Caution

The driver must monitor the surroundings before and during the whole maneuver. Drive slowly and carefully in reverse gear in case of reduced or no visibility.

It is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified. Be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

### **i Tip**

If repainting the rear bumper, consult a qualified workshop since certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar units.

In addition to the side blind spot alert, rear cross traffic alert warns of cross traffic from left or right side when driving rearwards at a speed up to 10 km/h (6 mph). It warns of approaching objects such as vehicles, trucks, pedestrians, cyclists and motorcycles.

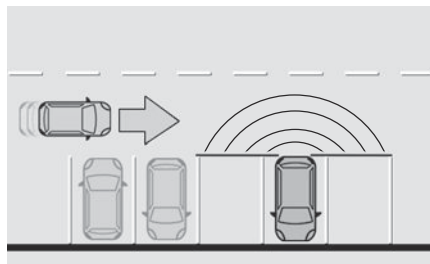
To monitor the area left and right behind the vehicle, the system uses two radar sensors located in the rear bumper on each side of the vehicle.

### **Activation / deactivation**



The system can be activated/deactivated in the ADAS app on the Infotainment Display.

### **Detection zone**



The system detects obstacles moving at speeds faster than 3 km/h (2 mph) and at a maximum distance of 40 m (130 ft)

### **Functionality**

If an approaching obstacle is detected while

the vehicle is in reverse gear,  or  flashes on the cluster. In addition, an audible signal is given when the vehicle is moving backwards.

### **System limitations**

The system may not operate properly in the following situations:

- towing trailer
- using a bicycle carrier on a towing device
- extreme temperature changes
- the rear bumper damaged
- accumulation or projection of external elements (e.g. mud, ice, snow), application of stickers.

### **Fault**



Illuminate on the cluster, accompanied by a message and a warning chime. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

## **Driver's Attention Assistance System**

### **DRIVER AWARENESS ALERT**

### **i Tip**

For more information, refer to the **General Information on the Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS) and Detection Sensors.**

The Driver's Attention Assistance System monitors the driving time and the vigilance of the driver. Monitoring the vigilance of the driver is based on the trajectory variations of the vehicle compared to the lane markings, and on analyzing the face of the driver (depending on version).

The system cannot replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

### **Warning**

These systems are in no way designed to keep the driver awake or to prevent the driver from falling asleep at the wheel. It is the driver's responsibility to stop if feeling tired. Take a break if you are feeling tired or at least every 2 hours.

## Driver Attention Warning



The system triggers an alert when it detects that the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 43 mph (70 km/h).

This alert is issued via the display of a message encouraging the driver to take a break, accompanied by an audible signal. If the driver does not follow this advice, the alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped.

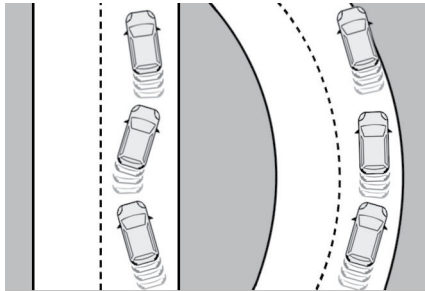
The system resets itself if one of the following conditions is met:

- With the engine running, the vehicle has been stationary for more than 15 minutes.
- The ignition has been switched off for a few minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened and their door is opened.

### **i** Tip

As soon as the speed of the vehicle drops below 43 mph (70 km/h), the system goes into standby. Driving time starts being counted again once the speed reaches above 43 mph (70 km/h).

## Driver Attention Warning by Front View Camera



The system assesses the driver's level of alertness, fatigue and distraction by identifying trajectory changes in relation to the lane markings.

To do this, the system uses a camera, placed on the upper part of the windshield.

This system is particularly suited to fast roads (speed higher than 43 mph (70 km/h)).

### **i** Tip

The system may perform a learning procedure for up to 30 minutes after the start of the monitoring. During this period, the driver's individual driving behaviour is analysed and no alert is given.

At a first alert level, the driver is warned by the message "**Caution!**", accompanied by an audible signal.

After three first-level alerts, the system triggers a further alert with the message "**Driving at**

**risk: Take a break**", accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal.

### **i** Tip

In certain driving conditions (poor road surface or strong winds), the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

### **!** Warning

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:

- Lane positioning assist is active.
- poor visibility (e.g. inadequate street lighting, heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall).
- dazzle (e.g. headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light).
- windshield area located in front of the camera (e.g. dirty, misted, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or masked by a sticker).
- lane markings absent, worn, hidden (e.g. snow, mud, dead leaves) or multiple (roadworks).
- close to the vehicle ahead (lane markings not detected).
- roads that are narrow, winding.

### Alerting the driver

The driver is alerted by a message,



illuminates and an audible signal is given.

After three first level alerts, the system triggers a new alert with a message,

accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal and



### Driver drowsiness and distraction detection with driver monitoring camera

The system monitors the driver's level of vigilance at speeds above 13 mph. (20 km/h) The system monitors and analyses visual signs of drowsiness or distraction of the driver by monitoring facial, head and eye movements. The system does not record any video nor is it capable of identifying the driver. The visual signs of drowsiness or distraction may be the following:

- driver diverts his gaze longer or more frequently away from traffic
- eyelids closing or blinking
- micro-sleep patterns

If the system detects certain facial movements, e.g. a complete closure of the eyes for a certain time, or analyses a certain level of drowsiness or distraction, an alert is triggered.

### Alerting the driver

The driver is alerted by a message and an audible signal is given.

Additionally,



illuminates.

If a severe distraction or drowsiness is detected, e.g. micro-sleep, sleep events, the driver is alerted immediately by a message accompanied by



and a more pronounced audio signal.

Drowsiness and micro-sleep alerts will only occur after a couple of minutes of driving and above a certain vehicle speed.

## REINITIALIZATION

Depending on version, the driver drowsiness and distraction detection is reinitialized in the following situations:

- the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes
- the speed remains below 40 mph (65 km/) for a few minutes
- the driver's seat belt has been unfastened and the driver's door has been opened
- the driver has changed
- the system is reselected

## DEACTIVATION/ACTIVATION

By default, the function is automatically activated at every engine start.



The settings are changed via the **ADAS** touch screen application.

or  
Direct access to the **Shortcuts for driving aids**.



Deactivation is confirmed by the illumination of this indicator light on the instrument panel.

## SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

In the following situations, the system with front camera may not operate properly or even not operate at all:

- poor visibility caused by inadequate lighting of the roadway, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog etc. dazzle caused by headlights of oncoming vehicles, low sun, reflections on damp roads, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light etc.
- no lane markings detected or multiple lane markings due to roadworks
- close vehicles ahead
- winding roads or narrow roads
- advanced lane keeping assist is active
- front view camera covered by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windshield damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers

In the following situations, the system with driver monitoring camera may not operate properly or even not operate at all:

- driver monitoring camera covered by dirt or foreign items, e.g. stickers

- the driver is wearing sunglasses with an infrared transmittance of less than 70%
- the driver monitoring camera is exposed to extremely high temperatures

## FAULT



In the event of a malfunction, this warning light illuminates on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.



This warning light illuminates on the instrument panel with the message **"Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual"** if the sensor is masked.

This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop. In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera is covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing. The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

# Speed Control Assistance System

## SPEED LIMITER



### Tip

For more information, refer to the **General Information on the Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS) and Detection Sensors**.



This system prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver (speed setting).

The speed limiter is switched on manually. The minimum speed setting is 19 mph (30 km/h).

The speed setting remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

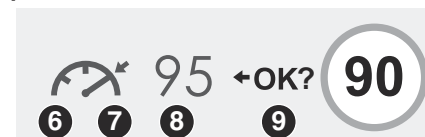
## Steering-mounted controls



1. Speed limiter selection
2. Switch on/Pause the speed limiter at the previously saved speed setting
3. Increase the speed setting
4. Decrease the speed setting
5. Activate the speed limiter at the previously saved speed setting  
Use the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function

For more information on the **Road signs recognition** function, refer to the corresponding section.

## Information displayed on the instrument panel



6. Speed limiter mode selection indication
7. Speed limiter on (green)/Pause (gray) indication
8. Speed setting value
9. Speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function (depending on version)

## Activating/Pausing the system

- Press **1-LIMIT** to select the speed limiter mode; the function is paused (gray).

- ▶ If the limit speed setting is suitable (most recent speed setting programmed in the system), press **2-II>** or **5-OK** to switch the speed limiter on (green).
- ▶ Pressing **2-II>** again temporarily pauses the function.

**Tip**

When the speed setting remains below the vehicle's speed for a prolonged period of time, an audible warning is emitted.

**Adjusting the speed setting**

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.

To change the speed setting using the vehicle's current speed:

- ▶ For steps of +/- 1 mph (1 km/h), make successive short presses on **3** to increase or on **4** to decrease.
- ▶ For steps of +/- 5 mph (5 km/h), press and hold on **3** to increase or on **4** to decrease.

When the function is activated, the limit speed value can be changed using the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function displayed on the instrument panel:

**When passing the sign:**

- ▶ Press **5-OK** to save the suggested speed.

This value is then immediately shown as the new speed setting on the instrument panel.

**After passing the sign:**

- ▶ Press **5-OK**. The message "**OK?**" is displayed to confirm the request to save.

- ▶ Press **5-OK** again to save the suggested speed. The new speed setting value is displayed on the instrument panel.

**Temporarily exceeding the speed setting**

- ▶ Fully depress the accelerator pedal.

The speed limiter is temporarily deactivated and the displayed speed setting flashes.

- ▶ Release the accelerator pedal to return to below the speed setting.

When exceeding the speed is not due to the driver's action (e.g. in case of a steep slope), an audible signal is triggered immediately.

**Warning**

On a steep descent or in the event of 6 sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the speed setting. If necessary, apply the brakes to control your vehicle's speed.

When the vehicle speed returns to the speed setting level, the speed limiter operates again: the speed setting display becomes steady again.

**Deactivating the system**

- ▶ Press **1-LIMIT**: the speed limiter information display disappears.

**Fault**

In the event of a speed limiter fault, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes. Have the system checked by a workshop.

**CRUISE CONTROL****Tip**

For more information, refer to the **General Information on the Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS) and Detection Sensors**.



This system automatically maintains the vehicle's speed at the value programmed by the driver (speed setting), without the use of the accelerator pedal.

Cruise control is switched on manually. It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h). With an automatic gearbox, mode **D** or second gear or higher in mode **M** must be engaged. With a drive selector, mode **D** or **B** must be engaged.

**Tip**

Cruise control remains active after changing gear, regardless of the gearbox type, on engines fitted with the Stop & Start function.

**Tip**

Switching off the ignition cancels any speed setting.

**Specific Recommendations****Warning**

The cruise control function does not guarantee compliance with the maximum

authorised speed and the safety distance between vehicles, the driver remains responsible for their driving. In the interest of public safety, only use cruise control if the traffic conditions enable vehicles to drive at a steady speed and maintain an adequate safety distance.

**Remain vigilant while cruise control is activated.** If you press and hold one of the speed setting modification buttons, your vehicle may change speed very abruptly. When **descending a steep hill**, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the set speed. Brake if necessary to control the vehicle speed. On **steep climbs** or when towing, the set speed may not be reached or maintained.

### Tip

#### Exceeding the programmed speed setting

You can **temporarily** exceed the speed setting by pressing the accelerator pedal (the pause signal will appear). To return to the speed setting, press SET+/SET-, the set speed will be equal to the current vehicle speed (when the set speed is reached again, the pause signal disappears).

### Operating Limits

#### Warning

Never use the system in the following situations:

- In an urban area with the risk of pedestrians crossing the road.

- In heavy traffic (except versions with Stop & Go function).
- On winding or steep roads.
- On slippery or flooded roads.
- In poor weather conditions.
- In the event of restricted visibility for the driver.
- Driving on a racing track.
- Driving on a rolling road.
- When using a "space-saver" type spare wheel
- When using snow chain or non-slip covers.

### Steering-mounted controls



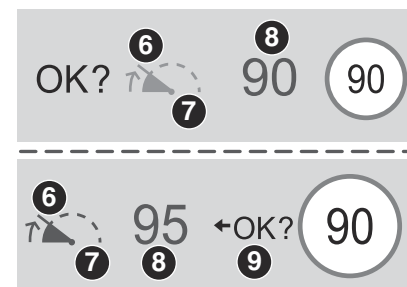
1. Cruise control selection
2. Switch on/Pause cruise control at the previously saved speed setting
3. Increase the speed setting (if cruise control activated) Activation of cruise

control in progress (if cruise control deactivated)

4. Decrease the speed setting (if cruise control activated) Activation of cruise control in progress (if cruise control deactivated)
5. Activation of cruise control in progress Use the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function

For more information on the **Traffic Sign Assist** function, refer to the corresponding section.

### Information displayed on the instrument panel



6. Cruise control mode selection indication
7. Cruise control on (green)/Pause (gray) indication
8. Speed setting value

9. Speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function (depending on version)

### Activation/Deactivation

- ▶ Press **1-ASSIST** to select the cruise control mode; the function is paused (gray).
- ▶ Press **3, 4** or press **5-OK** to activate the cruise control and save a speed setting as soon as the vehicle speed reaches the desired level (green).
- ▶ Pressing **2-II>** temporarily pauses the function.
- ▶ Pressing **2-II>, 3, 4** or **5-OK** again will reactivate cruise control (green).

#### Tip

Cruise control operation is also temporarily interrupted (pause):

- By pressing the brake pedal.
- Automatically, if the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is triggered.
- By shifting to neutral or engaging reverse gear.
- By using the electric parking brake.

### Modifying the speed setting

The cruise control must be active.

To change the speed setting using the vehicle's current speed:

- ▶ For steps of +/- 1 mph (1 km/h), make successive short presses on **3** to increase or **4** to decrease.
- ▶ For steps of +/- 5 mph (5 km/h), press and hold on **3** to increase or **4** to decrease.

#### Warning

Prolonged pressing and holding on **3** or **4** causes a very rapid change in vehicle speed.

#### Warning

As a precaution, we recommend setting a cruise speed fairly close to the current speed of your vehicle, to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

When the function is activated, the speed setting value can be changed using the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function displayed on the instrument panel:

#### When passing the sign:

- Press **5-OK** to save the suggested speed.

This value is then immediately shown as the new speed setting on the instrument panel.

#### After passing the sign:

- ▶ Press **5-OK**. The message **"OK?"** is displayed to confirm the request to save.
- ▶ Press **5-OK** again to save the suggested speed. The new speed setting value is displayed on the instrument panel.

#### Off

- ▶ Press **1**: the cruise control information display disappears.

#### Fault

In the event of a malfunction, dashes are displayed flashing and then fixed instead of the speed setting.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

#### Warning

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids** and the **Specific recommendations on cruise control**.

This system automatically maintains the vehicle speed at a value set by the driver (speed setting), while respecting a safety distance from the vehicle in front (target vehicle) previously set by the driver. The system automatically manages the acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle. With the **Stop & Go function** (with the e-DCS7 automatic gearbox or drive selector), the system manages braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop and restarts the vehicle.

#### Warning

The brake lamps come on if the vehicle is slowed down by the system. The system is not operational in the event of a brake lamp failure.



To do this, the system uses a camera fitted at the top of the windshield and a radar fitted in the front bumper.

**Warning**

Primarily designed for driving on main roads and motorways, this system only works with moving vehicles driving in the same direction as your vehicle.

**Tip**

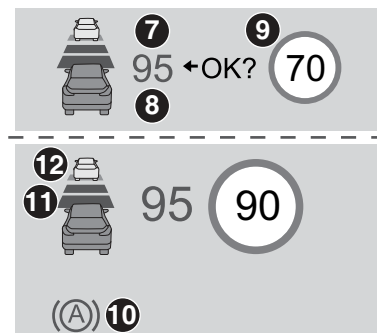
If the driver activates the direction indicator to overtake a slower vehicle, cruise control may temporarily reduce the distance to the target vehicle to facilitate overtaking, without exceeding the speed setting.

**Steering-mounted controls**

1. Selection/Deselection of cruise control only or Drive Assist Plus (depending on version)
2. Switch on/Pause cruise control at the previously saved speed setting  
Confirmation of vehicle restart after automatic stop (version with Stop & Go function)

3. Increase the speed setting (if cruise control activated) Activation of cruise control in progress (if cruise control deactivated)
4. Decrease the speed setting (if cruise control activated) Activation of cruise control in progress (if cruise control deactivated)
5. Activation of cruise control in progress  
Use the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function
6. Display and configuration of the inter-vehicle distance setting

For more information on the **Road signs recognition** function, refer to the corresponding section.

**Information displayed on the instrument panel**

7. Cruise control activated (green)/paused (grey)
8. Speed setting value
9. Speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function
10. Vehicle held stationary (version with Stop&Go function)
11. Inter-vehicle distance setting
12. Position of the vehicle detected by the system

**Use****Selecting the system**

- With the engine running, press successively on **1-ASSIST** until cruise control mode is displayed on the instrument panel.
- After a few seconds, cruise control mode is selected. The Driving aids area is displayed (gray) and cruise control is ready to be activated.

**Switching on cruise control**

With an automatic gearbox or a drive selector, your speed must be between 0 and 112 mph (0 and 180 km/h).

System activation is also subject to the following conditions:

- Driver's door closed.
- Driver's seat belt fastened.
- Mode **D** selected on the automatic gearbox.
- Parking brake released.
- If the vehicle is stationary, brake pedal depressed.

A message OK? is displayed if all activation conditions are met.

- Press **3, 4** or **5-OK**: the current speed becomes the speed setting (minimum 19 mph (30 km/h)) and cruise control is immediately activated (green display).

### Modifying the speed setting

To change the speed setting using the vehicle's current speed:

- For steps of +/- 1 mph (1 km/h), make successive short presses on **3** to increase or **4** to decrease.
- For steps of +/- 5 mph (5 km/h), press and hold on **3** to increase or **4** to decrease.



#### Warning

Prolonged pressing and holding on **3** or **4** causes a rapid change in vehicle speed.

When the function is activated, the speed setting value can be changed using the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function displayed on the instrument panel:

### When passing the sign:

- Press **5-OK** to save the suggested speed.

This value is then immediately shown as the new speed setting on the instrument panel.

### After passing the sign:

- Press **5-OK**. The message "**OK?**" is displayed to confirm the request to save.
- Press **5-OK** again to save the suggested speed. The new speed setting value is displayed on the instrument panel.

### Pausing/Resumption of cruise control

- Press **2-II>** or depress the **brake pedal**.

The symbol "**II>**" is displayed if all activation conditions are met.

Cruise control may also have been paused:

- automatically, if the electronic stability control (ESC) system is triggered.
- by shifting to neutral or engaging reverse gear.
- by using the electric parking brake.
- by unfastening the seat belt.
- by opening the driver's door.
- Press **2-II>** or **5-OK** to reactivate cruise control.

With an automatic gearbox or a drive selector, following braking that has brought the vehicle to a complete stop, if the traffic conditions do not allow the vehicle to begin moving again within 3 seconds of stopping, press **2-II>** or the accelerator pedal to move off.



#### Tip

Cruise control remains active following a gear change.



#### Warning

When cruise control is paused and the driver tries to reactivate it, the message "**Activation not possible, conditions not met**" is temporarily displayed if reactivation is impossible (required conditions not met).

### Changing the programmed speed setting with the Road signs recognition function

- Press **5-OK** to accept the speed suggested by the function on the instrument panel, then press again to confirm.



#### Warning

If the selected speed is far from the current vehicle speed, a strong acceleration or deceleration is felt.

### Changing the inter-vehicle distance

- Press **6** to display the distance setting thresholds ("**Distant**", "**Normal**" or "**Close**"), then make successive short presses to select a threshold.

After a few seconds, the option is accepted and will be memorized when the ignition is switched off.

The driver must keep a sufficient safety distance from the vehicle in front.

### Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

- Depress the accelerator pedal. The system is suspended as long as the acceleration is maintained. When the accelerator pedal is released, the speed setting flashes while the current vehicle speed is above the speed setting.

### Deselecting the system

- Press successively on **1-ASSIST** until **OFF** mode is displayed on the instrument panel.
- After a few seconds, cruise control mode is deselected. The Driving aids area disappears.

## Messages and alerts

**i Tip**  
The actual order of display of the messages or alerts may be different.

- 

Cruise control selected, but cannot be activated. All the operating conditions have not been met.
- 

(gray)

Cruise control selected, awaiting confirmation for activation. All the operating conditions are met.
- 

(gray)

Cruise control paused, but cannot be reactivated. All the operating conditions have not been met.
- 

(gray)/(gray)

Cruise control paused, awaiting confirmation for reactivation. All the operating conditions are met.
- 

(green)/(green)

Cruise control active, vehicle detected.
- 

(gray)/(green)

Cruise control suspended, following brief acceleration by the driver.



(orange)  
"Take control"

- Brake or accelerate, depending on the context.



(red)  
"Take control"

- **Take back control of the vehicle immediately:** the system cannot manage the current driving situation.



"Activation not possible, conditions not met"

The system refuses to activate cruise control, as the necessary conditions are not fulfilled.

### Stop function



(gray)/(green)

"Cruise paused" (for a few seconds).

The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop and is keeping it immobilized: cruise control is paused. The driver must accelerate to move off again, then reactivate cruise control.

## Stop & Go function



(green)/  
(green)

The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop.

Within 3 seconds of stopping, the vehicle gradually and automatically begins moving again.

Beyond 3 seconds of stopping, the driver must accelerate or press **2-11>** to move off.



**i Tip**  
If the driver takes no action after the vehicle has been stopped, the electric parking brake is applied automatically after about 5 minutes.



**Warning**  
While the vehicle is immobilized, the following recommendations apply:

- The driver should not leave the vehicle.
- Do not open the boot.
- Do not drop off or pick up passengers.
- Do not engage reverse gear.



**Warning**  
When restarting the vehicle, beware of cyclists, pedestrians or animals who are not taken into account by the system. The driver must monitor their surroundings.

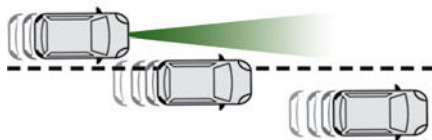
## Operating limits

Cruise control operates by day and night, in dry weather or moderate rainfall.

Certain situations cannot be managed by the system and require driver intervention.

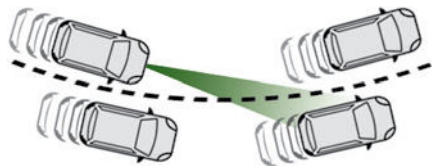
**Cases not taken into account by the system:**

- Pedestrians, cyclists, animals.
- Stationary vehicles (e.g. traffic jams, breakdown).

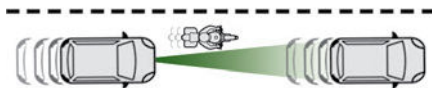


- Vehicles crossing your lane.
- Vehicles driving in the opposite direction.

**Situations where the driver must suspend the system:**



- Vehicles in a tight bend.
- When approaching a roundabout.

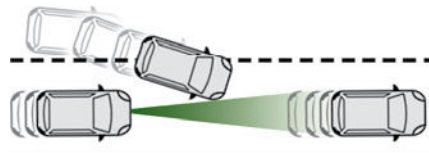


- When following a narrow vehicle.

Reactivate the system when conditions allow.

**Situations in which the driver is prompted to immediately resume control:**

- Excessively sharp deceleration by the vehicle in front of you.



- When a vehicle cuts in sharply between your vehicle and the one in front.

**Warning**

Some vehicles on the road may be poorly perceived or interpreted by the camera and/or the radar (e.g. truck), which can lead to an incorrect evaluation of distances and result in inappropriate acceleration or braking of the vehicle.

**Warning**

Pay particular attention:

- When motorcycles are present and when there are vehicles staggered across the traffic lane.
- When entering a tunnel or crossing a bridge.

**Warning**

If any of the following malfunctions occurs, do not use the system:

- Following an impact on the windshield close to the camera or on the front bumper.
- If a brake light is not working.

**Warning**

If the vehicle has undergone any of the following modifications, do not use the system:

- Carrying long objects on roof bars.
- Towing.
- Front end of the vehicle modified (for example by adding long-range headlights or painting the front bumper).
- Obstructed radar and/or camera.

**Fault**

In the event of a malfunction, dashes are displayed (orange) instead of the speed setting.



This warning light comes on, accompanied by a message and an audible signal, to confirm the malfunction.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Off-road and Low-Range Operations Assistance System

### HILL ASSIST DESCENT CONTROL (HADC)

Hill Assist Descent Control system for medium to steep slopes, on tarmac or other road surfaces (e.g. gravel, mud).

This system reduces the risk of slip or loss of control of the vehicle when descending, whether going forward or in reverse. During a descent, the system assists the driver in maintaining a constant speed, depending on the gear engaged, while progressively releasing the brakes.



#### Tip

For the system to activate, the gradient must be greater than 5%. The system can be used with the gear selector at **N**, **D** or **R**.



#### Tip

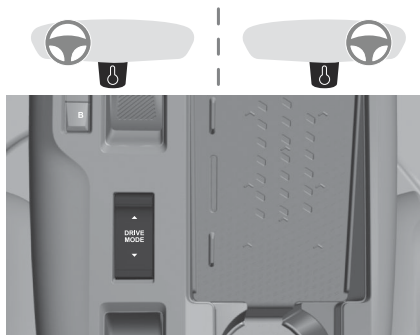
The system is no longer available if the speed of the vehicle is:

- Above 43 mph (70 km/h)
- Managed by the adaptive cruise control function.

#### Activation/Deactivation

By default, the system is not selected. The state of the system is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

The driver can also select the system when the engine is running or when the vehicle is stationary. To select the system, at speeds below 31 mph (50 km/h):



- ▶ Press this button; a window is displayed on the touchscreen.
- ▶ Click "**Hill Assist Descent Control**" button to activate/deactivate.



- The system is activated when this indicator light appears in gray on the instrument panel.



- The system becomes active at speeds below 19 mph (30 km/h); this indicator light illuminates in green on the instrument panel.

- When the vehicle begins its descent, the driver can release the accelerator and brake pedals; the system regulates the speed:



- If the gearbox is in first or second gear, 5 the speed decreases and the indicator light flashes rapidly.

If the gearbox is in neutral, the speed decreases and the indicator light flashes slowly; in this case, the maintained descent speed is lower.



#### Tip

Activation of the system may cause noise in the transmission. This is perfectly normal and has no consequence on the behaviour of the vehicle.

On a downward slope, with the vehicle stationary, if the driver releases the accelerator and brake pedals, the system will release the brakes to set the vehicle gradually in motion. The brake lights illuminate automatically when the system is regulating. If the speed exceeds 19 mph (30 km/h), regulation is paused automatically, the indicator light goes back to gray in the instrument panel. Regulation resumes automatically when the speed falls below 19 mph (30 km/h) again, if the slope and pedal release conditions are met. The driver can depress the accelerator or brake pedal again at any time.

#### Fault



In the event of a malfunction, this warning light comes on in green on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

## HILL START ASSIST (HSA)

This system keeps the vehicle briefly stationary (for approximately 2 seconds) when making a hill start, while you transfer your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal. The system is only active when:

- The vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal.
- Certain slope conditions are met.
- The driver's door is closed.



### Warning

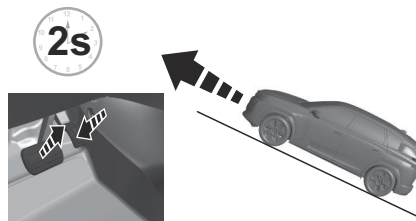
Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily by hill start assist. If someone needs to get out of the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually. Then check that the parking brake indicator light and the P indicator light in the electric parking brake control are on fixed.



### Warning

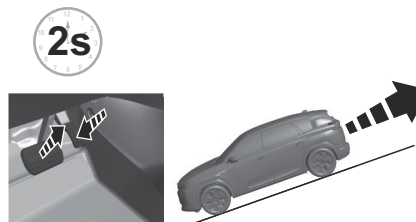
The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated. However, using the parking brake to immobilize the vehicle interrupts its operation.

## Operation



**Facing uphill, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when the driver releases the brake pedal:**

- If mode **D**, **M** or **B** is selected on an automatic gearbox.
- If mode **D** is selected on the drive selector.



**Facing downhill, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when the driver releases the brake pedal.**

## Fault



If the event of a malfunction, these warning lights illuminate on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Utility Assistance Features

### EXTENDED TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION (ETSR)



### Warning

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**



This additional system recognizes these road signs and displays them on the instrument panel.

As you approach it, the symbol of the corresponding sign is displayed on the instrument panel.

**Warning**

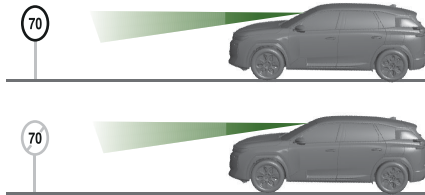
The actual road signs always take priority over those displayed by the system. The signs must comply with the Vienna Convention on road signs.

**Activation/Deactivation**

It is configured in the **ADAS** touch screen application.

**TRAFFIC SIGN ASSIST (TSA)****Warning**

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



This system displays the maximum speed authorized locally on the instrument panel, using:

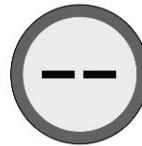
- Speed limit signs detected by the camera.

- Speed limit information from the on-board navigation system's mapping.
- Speed limit information from the connected services.
- Signs indicating a shared traffic zone detected by the camera.

**Intelligent Speed Assistance**

Using the camera at the top of the windshield and the vehicle's integrated navigation system, this system detects and reads speed limit signs and end of speed limits on the cluster. Up to two speed limit signs including supplementary signs are displayed in the cluster. If several speed limits are recognized, the vehicle may analyze and display the valid speed limit. When a traffic sign for a certain area, e.g. city or motorway, is recognized and the vehicle is fitted with integrated navigation, the corresponding speed limit will also be displayed.

If the system is activated but does not detect a speed limit sign, the following sign is displayed:



If the vehicle exceeds the speed limit by at least 5 km/h (3 mph), the speed limit displayed flashes about 10 seconds.

**Activation/Deactivation**

- ▶ Press this button successively until the Drive Assist Plus mode is displayed on the instrument panel.  
After a few seconds, the Drive Assist Plus mode is selected. The Driving aids area is displayed on the instrument panel.



The color of the symbols, representing the steering wheel and the side lines, depends on the operating state of the system:



(gray) One or more operating conditions is not met; the system is paused.



(green) All operating conditions are met; the system is active.



(orange) System malfunction.

- Press this button successively again until the **OFF** mode is displayed on the instrument panel.

- After a few seconds, the Drive Assist Plus mode is deselected. The Driving aids area disappears.

### Advanced Intelligent Speed Assistance

This system displays permanently speed limit information in the cluster independent of vehicle speed.

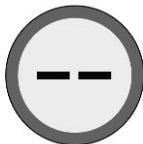
Providing the speed limit information involves the following systems, depending on version:

- camera at the top of the windshield
- vehicle's integrated navigation system
- telematics service

If traveling on a road with no speed restrictions, e.g., on German motorways, the following sign is displayed:



If no speed limit information can be provided, the following sign is displayed:



If a new speed limit is provided, a confirmation chime is given. The confirmation chime can be activated / deactivated on the Infotainment Display.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS)

This system alerts the driver if one or more tires suffer a drop in pressure.

This is achieved by comparing the information given by the wheel speed sensors with reference values, **which must be reinitialized every time the tire pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed.**

### Warning

The TPMS does not, under any circumstances, replace the driver's vigilance or the need to regularly check the tire pressures (including the spare wheel), especially before a long journey. Driving with under-inflated tires, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy load, high speed, long journey):

- Worsens road-holding
- Increases braking distances
- Causes excessive wear on the tires
- Increases energy consumption

### Tip

The inflation pressures defined for the vehicle can be found on the tire pressure label. For more information on the **Wheels and Tires**, refer to the corresponding section.

### Tip

#### Snow chains

The system does not have to be reinitialized after fitting or removing snow chains.

### Tire Pressure Monitoring System Low Pressure Warning



This is signaled by the steady illumination of this warning light, accompanied by an audible signal and, depending on equipment, the display of a message.

- ▶ Reduce speed immediately, avoid aggressive steering movements and hard braking.
- ▶ Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

### Warning

The loss of pressure detected may not always cause visible deformation of the tyre. Do not rely on just a visual check.

- Using a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of all four tires when cold.
- If it is not possible to carry out this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.
- In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).

**Warning**

When driving below 40 km/h (25 mph) or when using a dynamic driving style, the TPMS alert may be delayed. After a sudden loss of pressure or tire blow-out, the alert is not immediately triggered. This is because analysis of the values read by the wheel's speed sensors can take several minutes.

**Tip**

The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

**Reinitialization**

The system must be reinitialized after any adjustment to the pressure of one or more tires, and after changing one or more wheels.

**Warning**

Before reinitialising the system, make sure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the values written on the tyre pressure label. Check the pressures of the four tyres before performing the reinitialisation. The system does not advise if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.



With the vehicle stationary, reinitialize the system by pressing **Settings>Vehicle>Safety>TPMS Reset>YES**.

The reinitialization is confirmed by the display of a message and an audible signal.

**Malfunction**

In the event of a malfunction, these warning lights illuminate on the instrument panel.

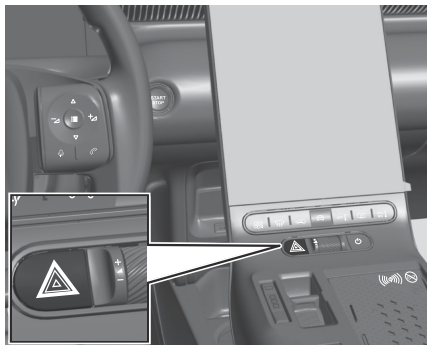
A message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

In this case, the tire under-inflation monitoring function is no longer performed. Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

**Tip****Non-standard or 'space-saver' spare wheel**

The use of this type of spare wheel may suspend tyre pressure monitoring. In this case, the malfunction warning lamp comes on and disappears once the wheel has been replaced by one of uniform size (the same as the others), the pressure readjusted and the reinitialisation carried out.

## Hazard Warning Lights



- ▶ Pressing this red button causes all the direction indicators to flash.

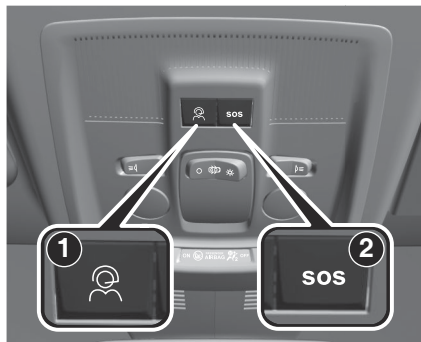
They can work with the ignition switched off.

## AUTOMATIC HAZARD WARNING LIGHTS

When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, the hazard warning lights come on automatically. They switch off automatically when you next accelerate. They can be switched off by pressing the button.

## Assist And SOS

### EMERGENCY CALL



1. ASSISTANCE
2. eCall (SOS)

Your vehicle may be fitted with the eCall (SOS) system either as standard or as an option. The eCall (SOS) system provides direct contact to the emergency services and is fully built into the vehicle. This contact is made either automatically via the sensors built into the vehicle, or by pressing button **2**. According to the country of sale, the eCall (SOS) system corresponds to the systems PE112, ERAGLONASS, 999, etc. The eCall (SOS) system is activated by default.

- ▶ To make an emergency call manually, press button **2** for more than 2 seconds. The lit indicator light and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the emergency services
- ▶ The eCall (SOS) system immediately locates your vehicle and puts you in contact with the appropriate emergency services.
- ▶ Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

The indicator light flashes while the vehicle data is being sent, and then remains lit when communication is established.

### Warning

In the event that a serious accident is detected by the sensors built into the vehicle, such as the airbag control unit, an emergency call is made automatically.

### Tip

The eCall (SOS) system is a public service of general interest and is free-of-charge.

## ASSISTANCE CALL

- ▶ If the vehicle breaks down, press button **1** for more than 2 seconds to request assistance. (confirmed by a voice message<sup>2</sup>)
- ▶ Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

<sup>2</sup> Depending on the geographic coverage of the "eCall (SOS)" and "ASSISTANCE" systems and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.

The list of countries covered and the telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country

**i Tip**  
Privacy mode allows you to manage the level of sharing (data and/or location) between your vehicle and the manufacturer. It can be configured in the **Settings** touch screen menu or application, depending on the equipment.  
By default, depending on equipment, deactivate/reactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing the 2 buttons, then press the "ASSISTANCE" button to confirm.

**i Tip**  
If you purchased your vehicle outside the dealer network, you are invited to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modify it as required. In a multilingual country, services can be configured to use the official national language of your choice.

**i Tip**  
For technical reasons and in particular to improve the quality of telematics services provided to customers, the Manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematics system at any time.

## Warning Triangle

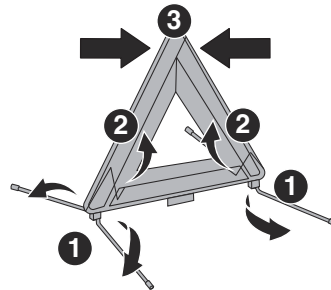
### WARNING TRIANGLE KIT

This reflective and dismantable device is to be installed on the side of the road when a vehicle is broken down or damaged.

### **Warning** Before getting out of the vehicle

Turn on the hazard warning lamps, then put on the safety vest to assemble and install the triangle.

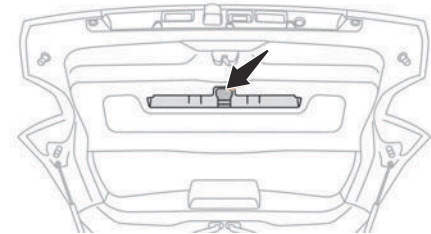
### ASSEMBLING THE TRIANGLE



For versions supplied with a triangle as original equipment, refer to the illustration above.  
For other versions, refer to the assembly instructions provided with the triangle.

- Put the triangle in place behind the vehicle, as required by local legislation.

## STORAGE COMPARTMENT



There is a compartment in the interior trim of the tailgate to store a warning triangle.

- After opening the tailgate, unhook the retaining elastic to release the case containing the warning triangle.

## Jacking the Vehicle and Wheel Changing

### WHEEL CHANGING TOOLKIT

Set of tools supplied with the vehicle. Its content depends on your vehicle's equipment:

- Chock and towing eye.
- Spare wheel.
- Temporary puncture repair kit.

**Caution**  
The tool kit is specific to the vehicle and may vary depending on version.  
Do not use it for any other purposes.

## ACCESSING THE TOOLS

The tools are located under the trunk floor.

To access them:

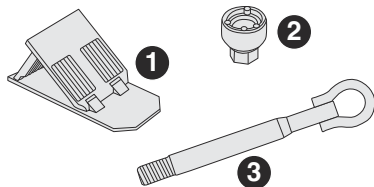
- ▶ Open the boot.
- ▶ Lift the boot floor past the two retractable stops.
- ▶ Place the boot floor onto these two stops to hold it up.



- ▶ Take the storage bag from the boot, then open the zip.

## LIST OF TOOLS

### Standard tools



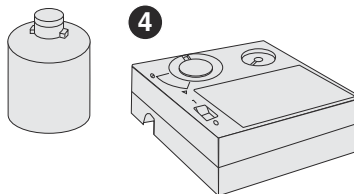
1. Chocks to immobilize the vehicle (depending on equipment)

2. Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box) (depending on equipment)  
To adapt the wheelbrace to the special 'security' bolts.

3. Removable towing eye

For more information on **Towing the vehicle** and using the removable towing eye, refer to the corresponding section.

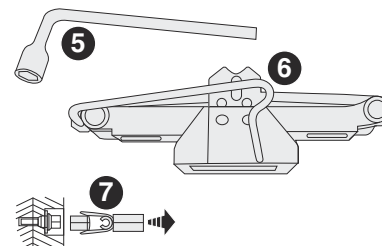
### With Temporary Puncture Repair Kit



4. 12 V compressor with cartridge of sealant and speed limit sticker For temporary repair of a tire and to adjust the tire pressure.

For more information on the **Temporary puncture repair kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

### With Spare Wheel



5. Wheelbrace For removing the wheel bolts. Used with the jack 6 to raise the vehicle.
6. Jack to raise the vehicle.
7. For removing the central bolt cover from alloy wheels.

For more information on the **Spare wheel**, refer to the corresponding section.

## SPARE WHEEL

(Depending on version)

The spare wheel can be classified as a temporary spare wheel depending on the size compared to the other mounted wheels and country regulations. In this case a permissible maximum speed applies, even though no label at the spare wheel indicates this.

If there is a label on the spare wheel, the permissible speed still depends on the country regulations.

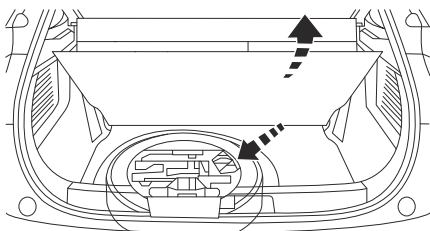
Only mount one temporary spare wheel. Take curves slowly. Do not use for a long period of time.

### Caution

The use of a spare wheel that is smaller than the other wheels or in combination with winter tires could affect driveability. Have the defective tire replaced as soon as possible.

Depending on version the spare wheel is located in the load compartment beneath the floor covering or in a holder beneath the vehicle floor.

### Accessing the spare wheel

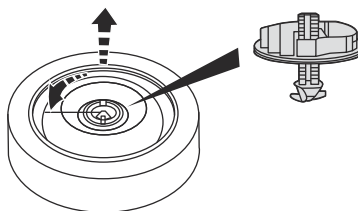


The spare wheel is stored in the boot, under the floor.

### Tip

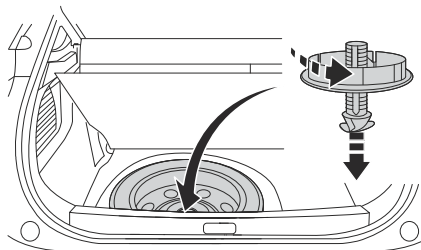
Depending on version, the spare wheel may be a standard steel, non-standard or 'space-saver' wheel.

### Removing the spare wheel



- Loosen the central nut.
- Remove the fastening device (nut and bolt).
- Lift the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- Take the wheel out of the boot.

### Putting the spare wheel back in place



- Put the spare wheel back in place in its housing.
- Loosen the nut on the bolt by a few turns.
- Position the fastening device (nut and bolt) in the middle of the wheel.

## WHEEL REMOVAL



### Warning

#### Parking the vehicle

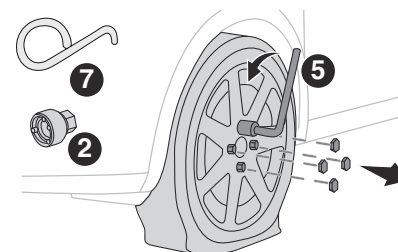
Immobilize the vehicle where it does not obstruct traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery. Select mode **P** to lock the wheels, apply the parking brake, unless it is set to automatic mode, and switch off the ignition.

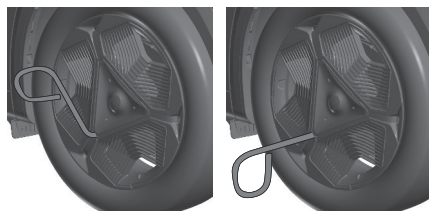


### Warning

#### Parking the vehicle

Check that the parking brake indicator lights on the instrument panel are on fixed. The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe. If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed. Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.



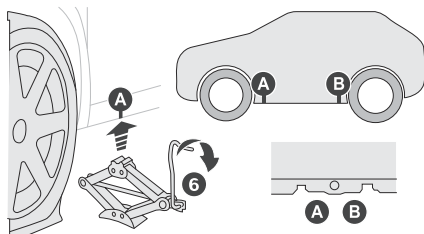


- Depending on version, remove the central piece of trim using tool 7 or the bolt covers.
- If the vehicle is so equipped, fit security bolt socket 2 to wheelbrace 5 to slacken the security bolt.
- Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace 5 only.

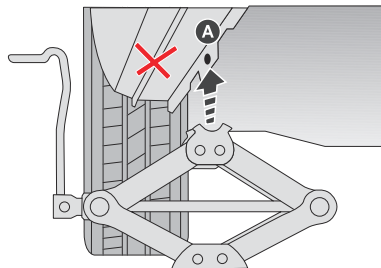


### Warning

Never use an impact wrench on the security bolt socket.



- Place the foot of jack 6 on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front A or rear B jacking point on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.
- Extend jack 6 until its head comes into contact with jacking point A or B; contact area A or B on the vehicle must be properly inserted into the central part of the head of the jack.
- Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to easily admit the spare (not punctured) wheel.



- Extend jack 6 until its head comes into contact with jacking point A or B; contact area A or B on the vehicle must be properly inserted into the central part of the head of the jack.
- Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to easily admit the spare (not punctured) wheel.

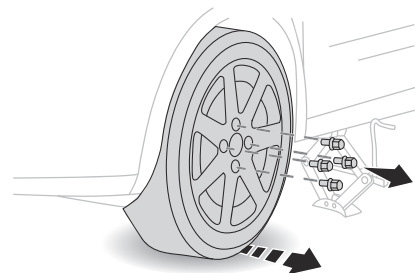


### Danger

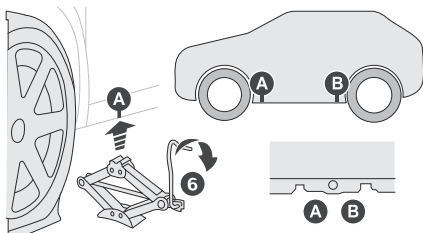
Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or collapse - risk of injury!

Take care to position the jack strictly at one of the jacking points A or B under the vehicle, ensuring that the head of the jack is centered under the contact area on the vehicle.

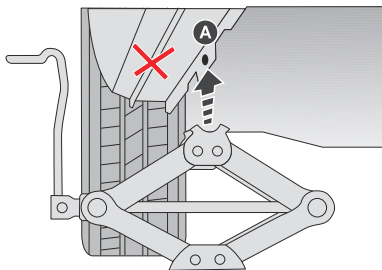
Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or of the jack collapsing - risk of injury



- Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
- Remove the wheel.

**BEV vehicles**

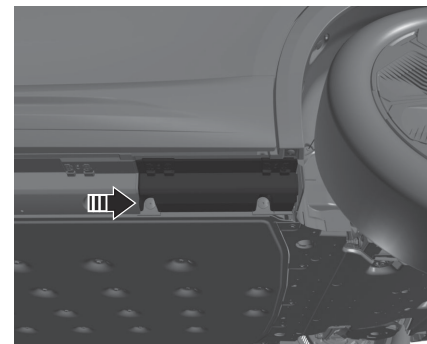
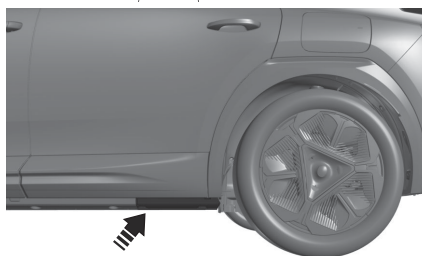
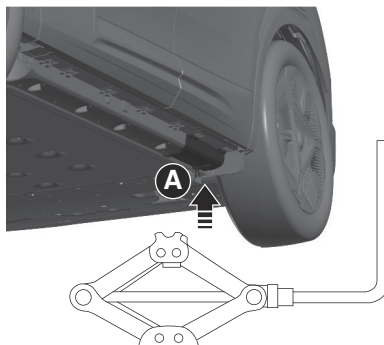
- For front wheel to be changed, place the foot of jack **6** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front **A** jacking point on the underbody.

**Tip**

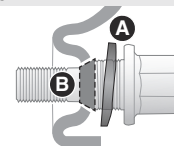
For high range electric versions, it is normal to observe that the flexible cover is pushed by the jack when it is deployed in the front **A** jacking point.

- For rear wheel to be changed, place the foot of jack **6** on the ground and ensure that it

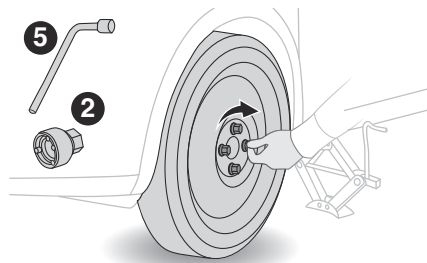
is directly below the rear **B** jacking point on the traction battery mounting rail.

**FITTING A WHEEL****Tip**

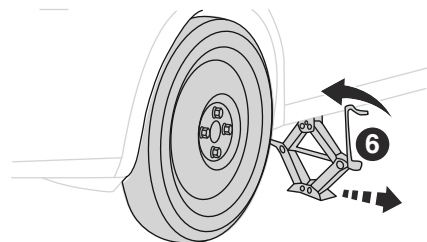
**Fitting a steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel**



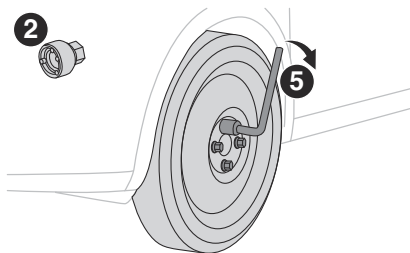
If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, the washers **A** do not make contact with the steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel. The wheel is held in place by the conical contact surface **B** of each bolt.



- Fit the wheel on the hub.
- Screw in the bolts by hand as far as possible.
- Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **5** equipped with a security socket **2**.
- Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.



- Lower the vehicle again fully.
- Fold jack **6** and remove it.



- Tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **5** equipped with a security socket **2**.
- Tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.
- Refit the bolt covers to each of the bolts (depending on equipment).
- Store the tools.

## AFTER CHANGING A WHEEL

**Warning**  
With a non-standard or 'space-saver' spare wheel



Deactivate certain driving aid functions (Active Safety Brake, Adaptive cruise control, etc.).

Do not exceed the maximum authorised speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) or the maximum distance of 50 miles (80 km). Driving with more than one spare wheel of this type is prohibited.

**Warning**  
Go to a dealer or a qualified workshop. Have the tightening of the spare wheel's bolts and its tire pressure checked. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tire can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

## Tire Repair Toolkit

**Tip**  
Visit this link to view explanatory videos: <https://shorturl.at/EVOSi>



Made up of a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows you to carry out a **temporary repair** of the tire so that you can drive to the nearest garage. It is designed to repair most punctures located on the tire tread.

**Tip**  
The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor to the 12 V power supply for long enough to repair a tire after a puncture

**Tip**  
For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

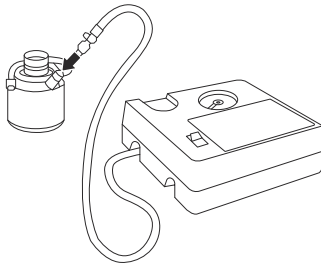
## TIRE REPAIR PROCEDURE



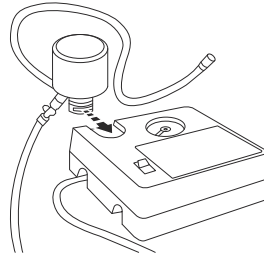
### Caution

Do not remove any foreign body (e.g. nail, screw) which has penetrated the tire.

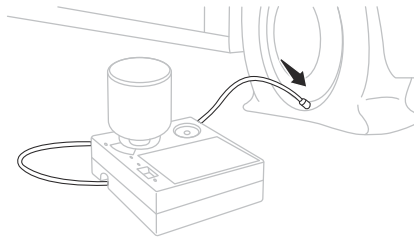
- ▶ Park the vehicle without obstructing traffic and apply the parking brake.
- ▶ Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lights, warning triangle, high visibility jacket, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.
- ▶ Switch the ignition off.
- ▶ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.



- ▶ Connect the pipe from the compressor to the bottle of sealant.



- ▶ Turn the bottle of sealant over and secure it in the notch provided on the compressor.
- ▶ Remove the valve cap from the tire to be repaired, and place it in a clean place.



- ▶ Connect the pipe from the bottle of sealant to the valve of the tire to be repaired and tighten firmly.
- ▶ Check that the compressor switch is in position "O".

- ▶ Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
- ▶ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.



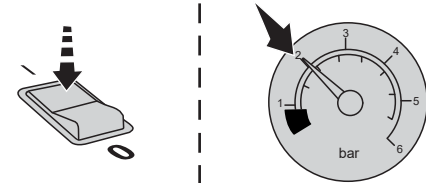
- ▶ Affix the speed limit sticker.



### Warning

The speed limit sticker must be affixed inside the vehicle in the area close to the driver, to remind them that a wheel is in temporary use.

- ▶ Switch the ignition on.



- ▶ Switch on the compressor by moving the switch to position "I" until the tire pressure reaches 2 bar. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the tire; do not

disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of blowback).

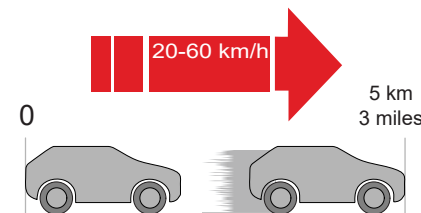
**Caution**

If after approximately 7 minutes, the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, this indicates that the tire is not repairable; contact a dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- ▶ Move the switch to position "O".
- ▶ Disconnect the compressor's electric plug from the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ▶ Remove the kit.
- ▶ Refit the cap on the valve.
- ▶ Remove and store the bottle of sealant.

**Warning**

The sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes. Keep this product out of the reach of children. The use-by date of the fluid is marked on the bottle. After use, do not discard the bottle into the environment; take it to a dealer or an authorized waste disposal site. Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a dealer or a qualified workshop.



- ▶ Drive immediately for approximately 3 miles (5 kilometers) at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)) to plug the puncture.
- ▶ Stop to check the repair and the tire pressure using the kit:
  - ▶ If the tire pressure is incorrect, contact a dealer to have the tire changed.
  - ▶ If the tire pressure is correct, drive a second time for approximately 3 miles (5 kilometers) at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), stop then check again the tire pressure using the kit to confirm the effective repair of the tire.

**Warning**

With a tire repaired using this type of kit, do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) and do not drive more than 125 miles (200 km).

You must contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the repair checked and the tire changed.

## CHECKING - ADJUSTING TIRE PRESSURE

The compressor can be used, **without injecting sealant**, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tire pressures.

- ▶ Remove the valve cap from the tire and keep it in a clean place.
- ▶ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
- ▶ Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.
- ▶ Check that the compressor switch is in position "O".
- ▶ Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
- ▶ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ▶ Switch the ignition on.
- ▶ Start the compressor by placing the switch at position "I" and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tire pressure label. To deflate: press the black button located on the compressor pipe, near the valve connection.

**Warning**

If after 7 minutes the required pressure is not reached, the tire is damaged; contact a dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- ▶ Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch in position "O".
- ▶ Remove the kit and stow it.
- ▶ Refit the cap on the valve.

### **Warning**

Should the pressure of one or more tires be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialize the under-inflation detection system.

For more information on **Tire Pressure Monitoring System**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Jump Starting

### LEAD-ACID 12V BATTERY

#### **Restriction**

These batteries contain harmful substances (sulphuric acid and lead). They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must never under any circumstances be discarded with household waste.

Dispose of used batteries at a designated collection point.

### **Warning**

If the battery fails (after warranty coverage), replace it with a battery of the same specification as the one used in the vehicle.

All battery information can be found online at  
<https://public.servicebox-parts.com/ACddb/>

### **Warning**

Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.

All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, to avoid any risk of explosion or fire.  
Wash your hands afterwards.

### **Warning**

#### **Electronic control units/LED technology headlights**

Never connect the negative jump lead to the metal part of the electronic control units or at the back of the headlights.

Risk of destroying the electronic control units and/or headlights!

Connect to the remote earth point provided for this purpose.

### **Warning**

#### **Frozen battery**

Never try to charge a frozen battery - risk of explosion!

If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a dealer or by a qualified workshop, who will verify that the internal components have not been damaged and that the case has not cracked, which could lead to a risk of leakage of toxic and corrosive acid.

### **Warning**

#### **Automatic gearbox**

Never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.



No sparks or naked flames, no smoking.



Always protect your eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness and injury.



Keep the vehicle's battery out of the reach of children.



The vehicle's battery contains sulfuric acid which can make you go blind or cause severe burns.



For more information, refer to the handbook.



Explosive gases can be present close to the battery.

## CONNECTING AN EXTERNAL 12V POWER SUPPLY

### **Warning**

Always check in advance for leaks, cracks or any evident sign of damage on the flat battery before proceeding.

**Warning**

Never start the engine by connecting a battery charger.

Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster. Check beforehand that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.

The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.

Switch off all electricity-consuming equipment on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).

Make sure that the jump leads are well away from the engine's moving parts (fan, belt, etc.).

Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.

**Warning**

Only use a specific 12 V battery charger capable of maintaining 13.5 V at 40 A (approx 600 W)

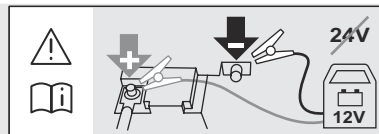
To charge the vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V. Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.

**Warning**

Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger. Never reverse polarities.

**Warning**

If this label is present, use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components.



**Tip**

It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

**Warning**

**Electronic control units/LED technology headlights**

Never connect the negative jump lead to the metal part of the electronic control units or at the back of the headlights.

Risk of destroying the electronic control units and/or headlights !

Connect to the remote earth point provided for this purpose.

**Warning**

**Precautions before working on the accessory battery**

Select mode P, switch off the ignition, check that the instrument panel is off and that the vehicle is not being charged.

**Tip**

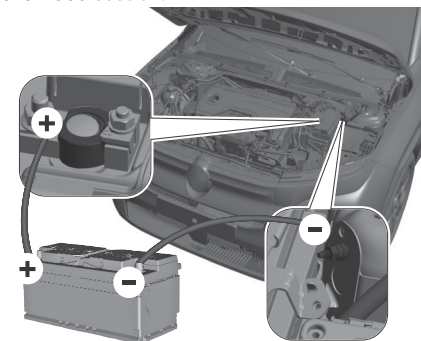
If the 12V battery is completely discharged, the electric door locks will not function and prevent access to the hood release lever.

Refer to **Keys- Central locking not functioning** for more information.

**Accessing the battery**

The battery is located under the hood.

Refer to the **Engine compartment - Opening the Hood** section.



- (+) Positive terminal
- (-) Negative terminal

**Connecting the external power source**

- ▶ Switch the ignition off.
- ▶ Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).

**Warning**

Depending on the power source :

- ▶ Make sure the generator is switched off before connecting the cables.
- ▶ Make sure the donor vehicle is switched off and not in contact with the receiving vehicle.

- ▶ Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- ▶ Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
- ▶ Connect the red cable to the (+) terminal of flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow), then to the (+) terminal of the backup battery **B** or of the booster.
- ▶ Connect one end of the green or black cable to the (-) terminal of the backup battery **B** or of the booster (or to an earth point on the assisting vehicle).
- ▶ Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C**.
- ▶ Switch on the generator or start the donor vehicle.

### Disconnecting the external power source

Proceed in reverse order to disconnect the external power source.

## ICE VERSIONS

On ICE versions, recharging the 12V allows starting the engine.

- ▶ Connect the external power source.
- ▶ After several minutes, start the vehicle.
- ▶ Let the engine idle for several minutes.
- ▶ Carry out the reinitialization procedures for the following equipment (if fitted):
  - ▶ Electronic key.
  - ▶ Sunroof.
  - ▶ Electric windows.
  - ▶ Date and time.
  - ▶ Preset radio stations.

- ▶ Once the vehicle is sufficiently recharged, disconnect the cables and close the hood before driving off.

### Tip

The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.  
In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period with the vehicle immobilized, the duration of which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

## MHEV VERSIONS

On MHEV versions, recharging the 12V battery allows starting of the engine and charging the 48V traction battery via the DC-DC converter:

- ▶ Connect the external power source.
- ▶ After several minutes, start the vehicle.
- ▶ Let the engine idle for several minutes.
- ▶ Carry out the reinitialization procedures for the following equipment (if fitted):
  - ▶ Electronic key.
  - ▶ Sunroof.
  - ▶ Electric windows.
  - ▶ Date and time.
  - ▶ Preset radio stations.
- ▶ Once the vehicle is sufficiently recharged, disconnect the cables and close the hood before driving off.

### Tip

The hybrid system starts the vehicle, but a 12 V supply is required. There are several reasons why the vehicle cannot be started.

### Warning

Driving immediately without having reached a sufficient level of charge may affect some of the vehicle's functions (e.g. e-Auto mode).

### Warning

**Do not try to charge the hybrid system directly.**

The hybrid system is connected to the 12V network through the DC/DC converter. Any operation may affect the overall behavior of the system.

### Warning

To charge the vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

## PHEV, BEV VEHICLES

If the 12V battery becomes flat, it becomes impossible to start or charge the vehicle. For PHEV, the ICE cannot be started via the 12V battery.

To re-enable charging of the vehicle:

- ▶ Connect the external power source.
- ▶ Turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute to let the electronic system reinitialize.

- ▶ If required, charge the traction battery via the Onboard Charger.
- ▶ Carry out the reinitialization procedures for the following equipment (if fitted):
  - ▶ Electronic key.
  - ▶ Sunroof.
  - ▶ Electric windows.
  - ▶ Date and time.
  - ▶ Preset radio stations.
- ▶ Once the vehicle is sufficiently recharged, disconnect the cables and close the hood before driving off.

### Warning

#### Jump-starting another vehicle

Do not use the accessory battery to jump-start another vehicle or to charge another vehicle's battery.

## CHARGING ANOTHER VEHICLE

Procedure for charging another vehicle is identical to the procedure of "Jump Starting", under the point of view of the supplying vehicle.

### Warning

Ensure the flat vehicle can be jump started (i.e. it is not a BEV vehicle)

### Warning

Ensure the supplying battery is fully charged and in optimal operating conditions.

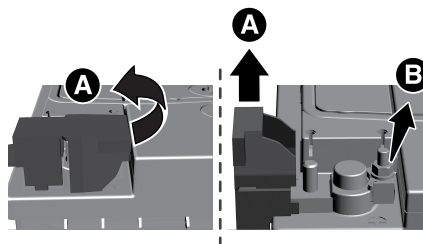
### Warning

Always check in advance for leaks, cracks or any evident sign of damage on the flat battery before proceeding.

## BATTERY CLAMP

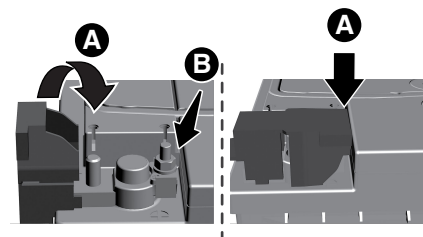
To avoid discharging the battery in case of long term storage, disconnecting the 12V battery may be necessary.

### Disconnecting the (+) terminal



- ▶ Lift the plastic cover **A** on the (+) terminal.
- ▶ Use a 10 mm wrench or socket to unscrew the nut **B** and detach the plastic cover.
- ▶ Remove the plastic cover **A** by lifting it off.

### Reconnecting the (+) terminal



- ▶ Refit the plastic cover **A** on the (+) terminal.
- ▶ Use a 10 mm wrench or socket to screw the nut **B** back.
- ▶ Close the plastic cover **A** to cover the terminals.

## Towing the vehicle

### Tip

#### General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving. Check that the towing vehicle is heavier than the towed vehicle. The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence. When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towbar; ropes and straps are prohibited. The towing vehicle must move off gently.

When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.

**Warning**  
A professional recovery service must be called in the following cases:

- broken down on a motorway or main road
- not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake
- not possible to tow a vehicle with an automatic gearbox, with the engine running
- towing with only two wheels on the ground
- four-wheel drive vehicle
- no approved towbar available

**Warning**  
Before towing the vehicle, it is essential to put the vehicle in free-wheeling mode.  
For more information on **Free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.

**Warning**  
Special feature of towing for hybrid vehicles

**With both rear wheels on the ground:** it is only authorized for short distances (about 9 miles (15 km)) and at reduced speed (maximum 15 mph (25 km/h)).

**With all four wheels on the ground:** the vehicle can be towed a maximum of 0.06

mile (100 meters) at a maximum speed of 6 mph (10 km/h) (automatic gearbox in mode N and N displayed in the instrument panel).

**Warning**  
PHEV vehicles

Before any intervention, with the ignition on, depress the brake pedal and select mode **N**, then switch off the hybrid system (**READY** indicator light off).  
Always call on professionals for recovery of the vehicle on a flatbed lorry or trailer.  
Use the towing eye only to free the vehicle if it is stuck, or to secure it for recovery on a flatbed lorry or trailer.

**Tip**  
Electric vehicles

An electric vehicle cannot under any circumstances be used to tow another vehicle.  
However, it may be used, for example, to exit a rut.

**Tip**  
In case of battery or electric parking brake failure, it is essential to call a professional using flatbed recovery vehicles.

## TOWING CONSTRAINTS

When towing the vehicle, lift any driven wheels off the ground.

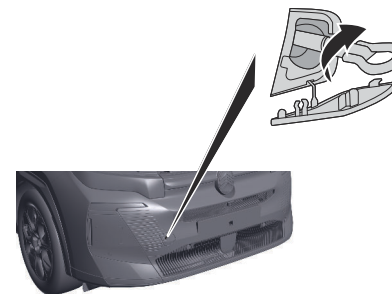
For 4 Wheel Drive vehicles, towing is not allowed and a flatbed truck must be used.0

## USING THE TOWING TOOLS

For more information on accessing the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

### Towing your vehicle

To access the front screw thread:



- Unclip the cover by pressing at its top left-hand corner.
- Release the cover downwards.

To be towed:

- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towbar.
- Put the gearbox into neutral.

**Warning**  
Failure to observe this instruction could result in damage to certain components (e.g. braking, transmission) and to the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.



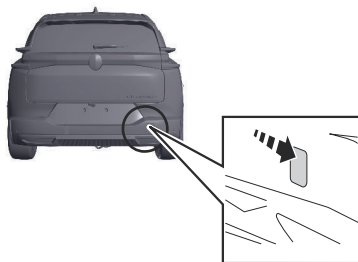
### Warning

Never tow the vehicle with the driving wheels on the ground and the engine off.

- ▶ Unlock the steering and release the parking brake.
- ▶ Switch on the hazard warning lights on both vehicles in accordance with the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.
- ▶ Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

### Towing another vehicle

To access the rear screw thread:



- ▶ Unclip the cover by pressing at its right-hand section.
- ▶ Pull the cover downwards.

To tow:

- ▶ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ▶ Install the towbar.

- ▶ Switch on the hazard warning lights on both vehicles.
- ▶ Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

## Event Data Recorder

(Depending on country of sale)

This vehicle is fitted with an accident data recording system, also called Event Data Recorder (EDR).

This system gathers and records certain vehicle data over a short period (a few seconds) before, during and after an event such as an accident or collision.

In order to gain a better understanding of the circumstances surrounding the event, this system records how the vehicle's various systems are operating at the time of the event, including:

- Any deployment of a restraint system (e.g. airbag, seat belt).
- The status of the seat belts of all the occupants (fastened/unfastened).
- The contact or intensity of pressure exerted on the pedal(s) engaged by the driver.
- The speed of the vehicle.
- The status of some driving and maneuvering aids systems.

The following are not recorded by the system:

- Data on normal driving conditions, in other words data not directly related to the event.
- Personal data on the driver and any other occupants.
- The geographical location of the vehicle at the time of the event.

- The reading of data recorded by the system requires the following:
- Access to the interior of the vehicle or to the system.

And

- Special equipment that can be purchased from the manufacturer BOSCH ([www.BoschCDRTool.com](http://www.BoschCDRTool.com)).

Aside from the vehicle Manufacturer, other parties such as law enforcement agencies may access this data in order to analyze the event.

## Introduction To Maintenance And Vehicle Care

### **Warning**

Do not remove the labels attached in different places on your vehicle. They include safety warnings as well as identification information for the vehicle.

### **Warning**

For all work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a dealer is able to provide.

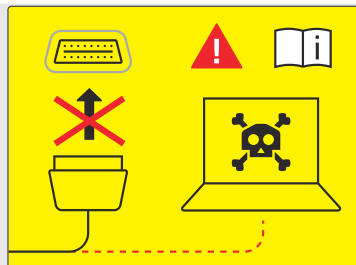
### **Warning**

Depending on country regulations, certain safety equipment may be mandatory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.

### **Warning**

#### **Installing electrical accessories**

The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not approved by the Manufacturer may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a dealer for information on the range of approved accessories.



As a safety measure, access to the **diagnostic socket**, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for authorised dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The Manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.

Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by the Manufacturer or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the Manufacturer will result in the suspension of the commercial warranty.

### **Warning**

#### **Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters.**

Before installing a radio communication transmitter with an external aerial, you must without fail contact a dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the UN ECE Regulation 10.

## VERY COLD CLIMATE COVERS

(Depending on engine and on country of sale)  
This removable device prevents the accumulation of snow around the radiator cooling fan.  
It consists of two elements for the upper part of the front grille and two other elements for the lower part.



### **Tip**

#### **In case of difficulty with installation/removal**

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.



### **Warning**

Before any operation, ensure that the engine is off and the cooling fan has stopped.

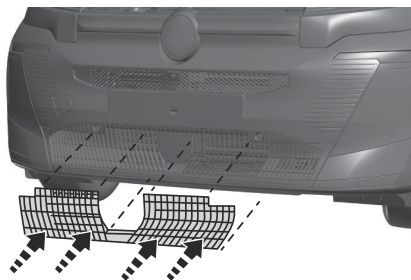


### **Warning**

It is essential to remove them when:

- The outside temperature exceeds 10°C.
- Vehicle Recovery is in progress.
- The speed is above 75 mph (120 km/h).

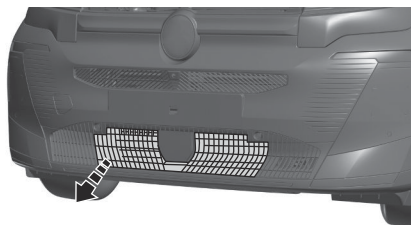
## Fitting



- Place one of the screens against the corresponding side of the upper bumper grille.
- First insert the upper mounting tabs into the bumper.
- Tilt the screen downwards until the lower mounting tabs are properly seated in the bumper (press on each tab to ensure it clicks into place).
- Check that the unit is held firmly in place by pressing around the edges.

Repeat the same steps for the other screen.

## Removing



- Insert a screwdriver into the slots located on the top of the screens to detach them from the grille.
- Gently tilt the screens downwards.
- Pull the unit towards you and support it as it becomes unclipped.

## Scheduled Servicing

### PERIODIC CHECKS

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the Manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine. Otherwise, have them checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

#### **Warning**

Only use products recommended by the Manufacturer or products of equivalent quality and specification. In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, the Manufacturer selects and offers very specific products.

### Passenger Compartment

#### Drive Selector



The drive selector does not require any maintenance.

### Electric Parking Brake (EPB)



This system does not require any routine servicing. However, in the event of a problem, do not hesitate to have the system checked by a STELLANTIS dealer or a qualified workshop.

#### **Tip**

For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.

### Passenger compartment filter



Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary.**

### Engine Compartment

#### 12V Battery



The battery does not require any maintenance.

Check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick-release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

#### **Tip**

For more information on the precautions to take before any work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

**i Tip**  
Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specifications. Its replacement should be carried out only by a STELLANTIS dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Air Intake filter



Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary.**

### Timing and accessory kits



The timing and accessory kits are used from the time the engine is started until it is switched off. It is normal for them to wear over time.

A faulty timing or accessory kit can damage the engine, rendering it unusable. Observe the recommended replacement frequency, stated in distance traveled or time elapsed, whichever is reached first.

### Wheels

#### Tires



The inflation pressure of all tires, including the spare wheel, must be checked on "cold" tires.

The pressures indicated on the tire pressure label are valid for "cold" tires. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 10 kilometers (6 miles) at over 50 km/h (31 mph),

add 0.3 bar (30 kPa) to the values indicated on the label.



#### Warning

Under-inflation increases energy consumption. Non-compliant tyre pressures cause tyres to wear prematurely and have an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding - risk of accident!

Driving with worn or damaged tires reduces the braking and road holding performance of the vehicle. Regularly check the condition of the tires (tread and sidewalls) and rims as well as the presence of the valve caps.

When the wear indicators no longer appear set back from the tread, the depth of the grooves is less than 1.6 mm; replace the tires as soon as possible.

Using different size wheels and tires from those specified can affect the lifetime of tires, wheel rotation, ground clearance, the speedometer reading and have an adverse effect on road holding.

Fitting different tires on the front and rear axles can cause the ESC to mistime.

Always mark the direction of rotation on the tires that will be stored when fitting winter or summer tires. Store them in a cool, dry place and away from direct exposure to the sun's rays.



Winter or 4-seasons tires can be identified by this symbol on their sidewalls.

### Brake Disc/Drum wear



For any information on checking brake disc/drum wear, contact a STELLANTIS dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.



#### Tip

After washing the vehicle, moisture, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Gently dab the brakes to dry and defrost them.

### Shock Absorbers



It is not easy for drivers to detect when shock absorbers are worn. Nevertheless, the shock absorbers have a major impact on road holding and braking performance.

For your safety and driving comfort, it is important to have them regularly checked by a STELLANTIS dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Underside of the Vehicle

### Oil Filter



Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

## CHECKING FLUID LEVELS

Check all of the following levels regularly in accordance with the Manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if required, unless otherwise indicated.

If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.



### Warning

The fluids must comply with the Manufacturer's requirements and with the vehicle's engine.



### Warning

Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

### Engine Oil



The level is checked, with the engine having been switched off for at least 30 minutes and on level ground, either using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on (for vehicles equipped with an

electric gauge), or using the dipstick.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). It is recommended that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 5,000 km (3,000 miles).



### Warning

In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

### Checking using the dipstick

For the location of the dipstick, please refer to the illustration of the corresponding engine compartment.

Proceed as follows:

- ▶ grasp the dipstick by its colored grip and pull it out completely
- ▶ wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean, lint-free cloth
- ▶ reinsert the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to visually check the oil level: the correct level is between marks MAX and MIN

### Do not start the engine if the level is:

- above mark MAX: contact a STELLANTIS dealer or a qualified workshop
- below mark MIN: top up the engine oil immediately



### Warning

**Oil grade.** Before topping up or changing the engine oil, check that the oil is suitable for your engine and complies

with the recommendations in the service schedule supplied with the vehicle (or available from your dealer or qualified workshop). Use of non-recommended oil may invalidate your warranty in the event of engine failure.

### Topping up the engine oil level

For the location of the engine oil filler cap, please refer to the corresponding engine compartment illustration.

- ▶ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- ▶ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- ▶ Top up the level if necessary.
- ▶ After checking the level, carefully screw the oil filler cap back on and replace the dipstick in its tube.



### Warning

The dipstick must be pushed completely in to prevent oil from spilling onto the engine. Risk of fire inside the engine compartment.



### Tip

The oil level indication displayed on the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on is not valid for 30 minutes following an addition of oil.

### Washer Fluid



Top up to the required level when necessary.

## Fluid specification

The fluid must be topped up with a pre-mixed product.

In winter (temperatures below zero), a fluid containing an anti-freeze agent which is appropriate for the temperature conditions must be used in order to protect the system's components (pump, tank, ducts, jets).

### Warning

Filling with pure water is prohibited in all circumstances (risk of freezing, limescale, etc.).

The use of vinegar or any other non-dedicated product will cause irreversible damage to the windshield washer system.

## Brake fluid



The level of this fluid should be close to the "**MAX**" mark. If not, check the brake pads for wear.

To know how often the brake fluid should be replaced, refer to the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

### Warning

Clean the cap before removing it to refill. Use only DOT4 brake fluid from a sealed container.

## Engine coolant

### MHEV/PHEV versions



It is normal to top up this fluid between two services.

The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.

A level of coolant that is too low risks causing major damage to the engine; the coolant level must be close to the "**MAX**" mark without ever going above it.

If the level is close to or below the "**MIN**" mark, it is essential to top it up.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan. As the cooling system is pressurized, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

In order to avoid the risk of scalding if you need to top up in an emergency, wrap a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.

Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

### BEV version



### Caution



Do not top up the coolant.



If the level is close to or below the "**MIN**" mark, it is essential to contact a STELLANTIS dealer.

## Engine Compartment



### Warning

Only perform engine compartment checks when the ignition is off. The cooling fan may start operating even if the ignition is off.



### Warning

The ignition system uses extremely high voltage. Do not touch.



### Warning

#### BEV

Never try to perform maintenance work on high voltage components yourself. You may be injured and the vehicle may be damaged. Service and repair of these high voltage components should only be performed by a trained service technician with proper knowledge and tools. Exposure to high voltage may cause shock, burns, and even death. The high voltage components in the

vehicle can only be serviced by technicians with special training.

High voltage components are identified by labels. Do not remove, open, take apart, or modify these components. High voltage cable or wiring has orange covering. Do not probe, tamper with, cut, or modify high voltage cable or wiring.

### **Warning** **BEV**

Only perform engine compartment checks when the vehicle is off.  
The cooling fan may start operating even if the vehicle is off.

### **Warning** **BEV**

Even small amounts of contamination to the liquids can cause damage to vehicle systems.  
Do not allow contaminants to contact the fluids, reservoir caps, or dipsticks.

### **Warning** **Stop & Start / e-Auto mode**

Before doing anything under the bonnet, you must switch off the ignition to avoid any risk of the engine restarting automatically. Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan or in certain moving components - risk of strangulation and serious injury!



### **Warning**

#### **Electric motor**

Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan or in certain moving components - risk of strangulation and serious injury!  
Before carrying out any work under the bonnet, you must switch off the ignition, check that the **READY** indicator light is off on the instrument panel and disconnect the nozzle from the charging connector if it is connected.



### **Tip**

The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents the bonnet being opened when the left-hand front door is closed.

### **Warning**

When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the bonnet stay with care (risk of burns), using the protected area.

When the bonnet is open, take care not to damage the safety catch.  
Do not open the bonnet under very windy conditions.

### **Warning**

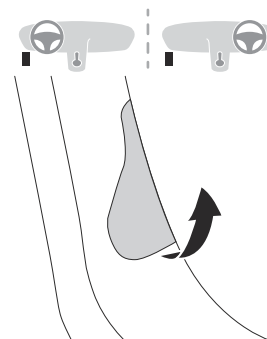
#### **Cooling of the engine when stopped**

**The engine cooling fan may start after the engine has been switched off.**

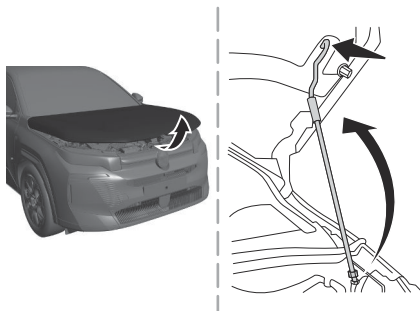
**Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the fan!**

## **ACCESSING THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT**

Opening the hood Engine compartment



- ▶ Open the left-hand front door.
- ▶ Pull the interior release lever, located at the bottom of the door frame, towards you a first time to unlock the bonnet.
- ▶ Pull the interior release lever towards you a second time to unlock the safety catch.



- Raise the bonnet.
- Unclip the stay from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the bonnet open.

## CLOSING THE HOOD

- Lower the hood and release it near the end of its travel.
- Check for positive locking of the hood.



### Warning

Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is strongly recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

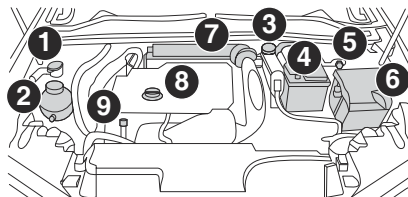
## LAYOUT OF THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

The engine shown here is an example for illustrative purposes only.

The locations of the following components may vary:

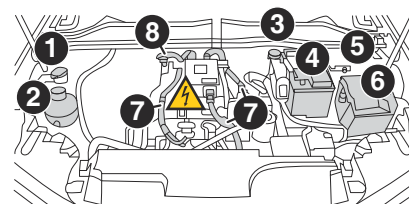
- Air filter.
- Engine oil dipstick.
- Engine oil filler cap.

### ICE/MHEV engine



1. Screenwash fluid reservoir
2. Engine coolant reservoir
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Battery/Fuses
5. Remote earth point (-)
6. Fusebox
7. Air filter
8. Engine oil filler cap
9. Engine oil dipstick

### BEV



1. Screenwash fluid reservoir
2. Engine coolant reservoir (level only)
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Battery/Fuses
5. Remote earth point (-)
6. Fusebox
7. 400 V electrical circuit
8. Emergency circuit-breaker for emergency services and maintenance technicians

For more information on the **Charging system**, refer to the corresponding section.

# Vehicle Maintenance

## WIPERS



### Tip

To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care
- clean them regularly using soapy water
- avoid using them to hold cardboard on the windscreen
- replace them at the first signs of wear

### Maintenance position of the wiper blades



### Caution

**NEVER** attempt to move the wipers manually. This can cause permanent damage to the mechanism.

This maintenance position is used while cleaning or replacing the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in wintry weather (ice, snow), to release the wiper blades from the windshield.

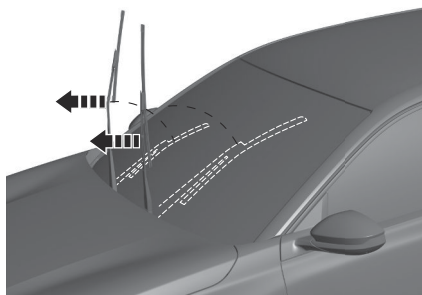
- ▶ Switch off the ignition.
- ▶ Within 60 seconds, pull the right control stalk towards you.

The wipers will move to a vertical position for easy access.

## Wiper Blade Replacement

With the wipers in the maintenance position :

### Front wiper blade replacement



### Caution

Take care not to hold the arms at the jet locations.  
Do not touch the wiper blades - risk of irreparable deformation.  
Do not release them while moving them.  
Risk of damaging the windshield!



### Tip

Do not apply "Rain X" type water-repellent products.



### Caution

Do not allow the wiper arms to slam on the windshield. This can damage the blades and the windshield.

- ▶ Disconnect the hydraulic quick connector of the arm from the filler neck of the worn wiper blade.
- ▶ Rotate the worn wiper blade to the stop in relation to the arm axle.
- ▶ Unclip the worn wiper blade closest to you and remove it.
- ▶ Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm; a clicking sound indicates correct assembly.
- ▶ Connect the hydraulic quick connector of the arm to the filler neck of the new wiper blade; a clicking sound indicates correct assembly.
- ▶ Repeat the procedure for the other wiper blade.
- ▶ Starting with the wiper blade closest to you, once again hold each arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the windshield.

### Rear wiper blade replacement

- ▶ Hold the arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.
- ▶ Clean the rear screen using screenwash fluid.
- ▶ Unclip the worn wiper blade and remove it.
- ▶ Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
- ▶ Once again hold the arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the rear screen.

### To return the wipers to the normal position :

- ▶ Gently place the wiper arms on the windshield.
- ▶ Switch on the ignition.

- Use the wiper control stalk.

## Fuses



### Warning

#### Changing a fuse

All work must be carried out only by a dealer or a qualified workshop.  
The replacement of a fuse by a third party could cause a serious malfunction of the vehicle.



### Tip

#### Installing electrical accessories

The vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.  
Before fitting other electrical equipment or accessories to your vehicle, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.



### Warning

The Manufacturer accepts no responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing the vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied or not recommended by the Manufacturer and not installed in accordance with its recommendations, in particular when the combined power consumption of all the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

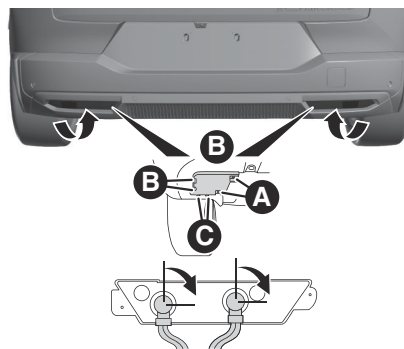
## Bulb Replacement

### FRONT LIGHTS

Front lights are designed with LEDs and cannot be changed.

Have lights repaired by a STELLANTIS dealer in case of failure.

### REVERSING AND REAR FOG LIGHTS



These lights can be changed from the inside of the rear bumper.

- Using a Torx screwdriver, remove the 2 fastening screws **A** from the access panel located below the bumper.
- Push the two lateral hooks **B** inwards using a flathead screwdriver to unclip the access panel.
- Tilt the access panel by removing the two attachment hooks **C** and the bumper's lateral centering pin.
- Twist the light holder a quarter-turn and remove it.

- Twist the light a quarter-turn to remove and replace it.



### Tip

To facilitate access to the fog light support, begin by removing the reversing light support.  
To reinstall the access panel, insert the two attachment hooks **C** and the lateral centering pin in the bumper, and clip the two lateral hooks **B**.



### Tip

#### Reinstallation of the lights

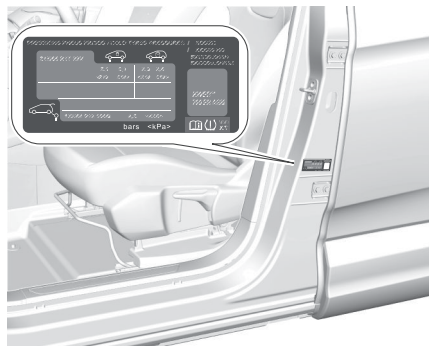
Perform the disassembly operations in reverse order.

## Tires and Wheels

### TIRE PRESSURE

Check the pressure of cold tires at least every 14 days and before any long journey.  
Do not forget the spare wheel. This also applies to vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring System.

The tire pressure information label on the left or right door frame indicates the original equipment tires and the correspondent tire pressures.



The tire pressure depends on the temperature of the tire. During driving, tire temperature and pressure increase. The pressure increases by nearly 10 kPa for a 10 °C temperature increase. This must be considered when warm tires are checked.

Tire pressure values provided on the tire information label and tire pressure chart are valid for cold tires, which means at 20 °C. The tyre pressure data refers to cold tyres. It applies to summer and winter tyres.

### **Warning**

If the pressure is too low, this can result in considerable tyre warmup and internal damage, leading to tread separation and even to tire blow-out at high speeds.

### **Warning**

Under-inflation increases energy consumption. Non-compliant tyre pressures cause tyres to wear prematurely and have an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding - risk of accident!

### **Warning**

Tyre pressure must be checked with tyres cold. Should it become necessary for whatever reason to check pressure with warm tyres, do not reduce pressure even though it is higher than the prescribed value, but repeat the check when tyres are cold.

### **Warning**

Improperly inflated tires are dangerous and can cause collisions.

### **Warning**

Over-inflation reduces a tire's ability to cushion shock. Objects on the road and potholes can cause damage that result in tire failure. Over-inflated or under-inflated tires can affect vehicle handling and can fail suddenly, resulting in loss of vehicle control.

### **Warning**

Unequal tire pressures can cause steering problems. You could lose control of your vehicle. Unequal tire pressures from one side of the vehicle to the other can cause the vehicle to drift to the right or left.

### **Warning**

Always drive with each tire inflated to the recommended cold tire inflation pressure.

## **TIRE CHAINS**

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behavior of the vehicle when braking.

### **Warning**

Snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

### **Tip**

Observe the legislation in force in your country relating to the use of snow chains and maximum authorised speeds.

Use only chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to the vehicle:

| Original tire size | Chain type       |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 225/60 R18         | 9 mm             |
| 225/55 R19         | 9 mm             |
| 235/55 R19         | 9 mm             |
| 235/50 R20         | Polaire PSGB 140 |

For more information on snow chains, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

### **Installation tips**

- To fit the snow chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface at the side of the road.
- Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks under the wheels to prevent movement of the vehicle.
- Fit the snow chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 31 mph (50 km/h).

- Stop the vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

**Tip**

It is strongly recommended that you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface before setting off.

**Warning**

Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow to avoid damaging the vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

## Bodywork-Exterior Care

### GENERAL RECOMMENDATIONS

Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging the vehicle.

**Warning**

Never use a high-pressure jet wash in the engine compartment - risk of damaging the electrical components!  
Do not wash the vehicle in bright sunshine or extremely cold conditions.

**Tip**

When washing the vehicle in an automatic roller-brush car wash, be sure to lock the doors and, depending on version, move the electronic key away and deactivate the "hands-free" function (Hands-Free Tailgate Access).

When using a pressure washer, keep the jet nozzle at a minimum distance of 30 cm from the vehicle (particularly when cleaning areas containing chipped paint, sensors or seals). Promptly clean up any stains containing chemicals liable to damage the vehicle's paintwork (including tree resin, bird droppings, insect secretions, pollen and tar). Depending on the environment, clean the vehicle frequently to remove salty deposits (in coastal areas), soot (in industrial areas) and mud/salts (in wet or cold areas). These substances can be highly corrosive. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop for advice on removing stubborn stains requiring special products (such as tar or insect removers). Preferably, have paint touch-ups performed by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

### HIGH GLOSS PAINT

**Warning**

Do not use abrasive products, solvents, petrol or oil to clean the bodywork. Never use an abrasive sponge to clean stubborn stains - risk of scratching the paintwork!  
Do not apply polish in strong sunshine, or to plastic or rubber parts.

**Tip**

Use a soft cloth and soapy water or a pH neutral product. Gently wipe the bodywork with a clean microfibre cloth. Apply polish with the vehicle clean and dry.

Comply with the instructions for use stated on the product.

### DECALS

(Depending on version)

**Warning**

Do not use a high-pressure washer to clean the vehicle - risk of damaging or detaching the decals!

**Tip**

Use a high-flow hose (temperature between 25°C and 40°C). Place the jet of water perpendicular to the surface to be cleaned. Rinse the vehicle with demineralised water.

## Interior Care

### GENERAL RECOMMENDATIONS

**Warning**

When washing the vehicle, never use a water hose or high-pressure jet to clean the interior. Liquids carried in cups or other open containers can spill, presenting a risk of damage to the instruments and controls and the controls located on the centre console. Be vigilant! To clean instrument panels, touch screens or other displays, wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. Do not use products (e.g. alcohol, disinfectant) or soapy water directly on these surfaces - risk of damage!

## SEAT BELTS MAINTENANCE

Do not bleach, dye or clean the belts with chemical solvents or abrasive cleaners. This will weaken the fabric. Sun damage can also weaken the fabric.

If the belts need cleaning, use a mild soap solution or lukewarm water. Do not remove the belts from the vehicle to wash them. Dry with a soft cloth.

Replace the belts if they appear frayed or worn or if the buckles do not work properly.



### Warning

A frayed or torn seat belt could rip apart in a collision and leave you with no protection. Inspect the seat belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, or loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the seat belt system. If your vehicle is involved in a collision, or if you have questions regarding seat belt or retractor conditions, take your vehicle to an authorized FCA dealer or authorized FCA Certified Collision Care Program facility for inspection.

## PLASTIC AND COATED PARTS

Clean interior plastic parts with a damp cloth (if possible made from microfiber), and a solution of water and neutral, nonabrasive detergent. To clean oily or persistent stains, use specific products free from solvents and designed to maintain the original appearance and color of the components.

Remove any dust using a microfiber cloth, if necessary moistened with water. The use of

paper tissues is not recommended as these may leave residues.



### Tip

Direct contact of air fresheners, insect repellents, suntan lotions, or hand sanitizers to the plastic, painted, or decorated surfaces of the interior may cause permanent damage. Wipe away immediately.



### Tip

Damage caused by these type of products may not be covered by your new vehicle limited Warranty.

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER AND DISPLAYS

The lenses in front of the instruments in this vehicle are molded in clear plastic.

When cleaning the lenses, care must be taken to avoid scratching the plastic.

Clean with a wet soft cloth. A mild soap solution may be used, but do not use high alcohol content or abrasive cleaners. If soap is used, wipe clean with a clean damp cloth. Dry with a soft cloth.



### Tip

Never use alcohol, petrols and derivatives to clean the dashboard and instrument panel lens.

## GLASS SURFACES

All glass surfaces should be cleaned on a regular basis with any commercial household-type glass cleaner.

Do not use scrapers or other sharp instruments that may scratch the elements.

When cleaning the rear-view mirror, spray cleaner on the towel or cloth that you are using. Do not spray cleaner directly on the mirror.



### Tip

Never use an abrasive type cleaner. Use caution when cleaning the inside rear window equipped with electric defrosters or windows equipped with radio antennas.

## FABRIC PARTS

Only clean the vehicle interior, including the instrument panel fascia and paneling, with a dry cloth or interior cleaner.

Clean the leather upholstery with clear water and a soft cloth. In case of heavy soiling, use leather care.

Use a specific product to clean carpets and fabric upholstery.

Clean fabric upholstery with a vacuum cleaner and brush.

Clothing fabrics may not be colorfast.

This could cause visible discolorations, especially on light colored upholstery. Removable stains and discolorations should be cleaned as soon as possible.

It is advisable to use a moist brush on velvet upholstery. Rub the seats using a soft microfiber cloth moistened with a solution of water and neutral detergent.

Clean seat belts with lukewarm water or interior cleaner.

**Warning**

Do not use volatile solvents for cleaning purposes. Many are potentially flammable, and if used in closed areas they may cause respiratory harm.

**Textile**

The dashboard, door panels and seats may contain parts made of textile material.

**Maintenance****Warning**

Do not use aggressive cleaning products (e.g. alcohol, solvent or ammonia). Do not use steam-cleaning systems - risk of affecting the adhesion of the fabrics!

**Tip**

Remove dust from the textile parts regularly with a dry cloth, soft brush or vacuum cleaner. Rub down the textile parts once per year with a clean, damp cloth. After leaving overnight to dry, brush with a soft-bristled brush.

**Stain Removal****Warning**

Do not rub the stain or it may spread or you may cause the substance to penetrate the surface.

**Tip**

Act quickly by reducing the stain from its edges inwards.

Remove as much substance or solids as possible using a spoon or spatula, and remove as much liquid as possible using absorbent paper.

**Tip****Product/Procedure to use depending on the type of stain:**

- Grease, oil and ink: clean with a pH-neutral detergent.
- Vomit: clean with sparkling mineral water.
- Blood: spread flour over the stain and allow to dry; remove with a slightly damp cloth.
- Mud: allow to dry and then remove with a slightly damp cloth.
- Cake, chocolate, ice cream: clean with lukewarm water.
- Sugary and/or alcoholic drinks: clean with lukewarm water, or lemon juice if the stain is persistent.
- Hair gel, coffee, tomato sauce, vinegar: clean with lukewarm water and lemon juice.

For solid substances, then use a soft brush or vacuum cleaner.

For liquid substances, then use a damp microfibre cloth and then dry with another cloth.

**Alcantara®**

Alcantara® is an elegant and practical material which is very resistant and easy to maintain.

**Warning**

Do not use printed cloths or printed absorbent paper. Do not use steam-cleaning systems.

**Tip**

Remove dust from the Alcantara® parts regularly with a dry cloth, soft brush or vacuum cleaner. Clean the Alcantara®, without rubbing too vigorously, with a white cotton cloth which is slightly damp.

To find out which products and procedures to use on different types of stains, refer to the "Textile - Stain removal" section.

For more information, go to the Alcantara® trademark website: [www.alcantara.com](http://www.alcantara.com).

**LEATHER SURFACES**

(where provided)

Leather is a natural product. Appropriate regular care is essential for its durability. It must be protected and nourished using a specific leather product, to keep it supple and preserve its original appearance. Remove the dry dirt with a chamois or slightly damp cloth, without exerting too much pressure. Remove any liquid or grease stains using an absorbent dry cloth, without rubbing. Then clean with a soft cloth or chamois leather dampened with water and mild soap. If the stain persists, use specific products and observe the instructions carefully.



### Warning

Do not use maintenance products which are not suitable for cleaning leather (e.g. solvent, detergent, petrol, pure alcohol). Do not use bleaching or colour-removal products (e.g. perchloroethylene). When cleaning items partly made from leather, take care not to damage the other materials with the specific leather product.



### Tip

Before cleaning greasy stains or liquids, quickly mop up any surplus. Before cleaning, wipe off any residues liable to scuff the leather, using a cloth that has been dampened with demineralised water and thoroughly wrung out. Clean the leather, without rubbing too vigorously, using a soft cloth moistened with soapy water or a pH-neutral product. Dry with a soft, dry cloth.

## FLOOR MATERIALS

(where provided)

Use the following guidelines for proper floor mat usage.

The original equipment floor mats were designed for your vehicle. If the floor mats need replacing, it is recommended that certified floor mats be purchased. Always check that the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.

Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.

Do not place anything on top of the driver side floor mat.

Use only a single floor mat on the driver side.

### Inserting and removing the floor mats

The driver side floor mat is held in place by two retainers.

To install the floor mat, proceed as follows:

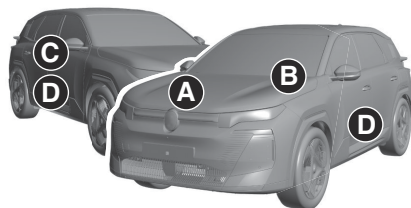
- ▶ move the seat backwards as far as possible
- ▶ align slots in the mat with the retainers
- ▶ push the mat to the floor

### Removing

- ▶ Move the seat backwards as far as possible.
- ▶ Remove the mat.

## Vehicle Identification

Various visible markings for vehicle identification and vehicle search.



### A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), under the bonnet.

Stamped on the chassis.

### B. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), on the dashboard.

Printed on an adhesive label visible through the windshield.

### C. Manufacturer's label.

Affixed to the right-hand door.  
Bears the following information:

- Manufacturer's name.
- European whole vehicle type approval number.
- Vehicle Identification number (VIN).
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW).
- Gross train weight (GTW).
- Maximum weight on the front axle.
- Maximum weight on the rear axle.

### D. Tyres/paint code label.

Affixed to the driver's door.

Bears the following information about the tyres:

- Tyre pressures, unladen and laden.
- Tyre specification, made up of the dimensions and type as well as the load and speed indices.
- Spare tyre inflation pressure.

Also indicates the paint color code.



#### Tip

The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting tyre pressure (on cold tyres).

In the event of a change in the type of tyres, contact a dealer for the tyre fits approved for the vehicle.

## Vehicle Data

### Engines

The engine characteristics are given in the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

Only the values available at the time of publication are presented in the tables.

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain missing values.



#### Tip

The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, as defined by Regulation EU 715/2007.

For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to the vehicle are indicated on the registration document, as well as in sales brochures. These values are also indicated on the manufacturer's plate or label.

For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

The maximum authorized nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.



#### Caution

When exterior temperatures are high, the vehicle performance may be limited in order to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 98 °F (37 °C), reduce the towed weight.



#### Caution

For Hybrid (MHEV) models, towing capacity is restricted above 2500m ASL as it may affect vehicle performance.

The GTW (Gross Train Weight) and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 meters. The towed load value must be reduced by 10% for each additional 1,000 meters of altitude.



#### Warning

Towing even with a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect its road holding. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.

When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of 62 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

## POWERTRAINS AND WEIGHTS DATA

### ICE

|                                                 |                            |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>Engine</b>                                   | <b>Turbo 180 Automatic</b> |
| <b>Code</b>                                     | EP6LTCM AT6III STTd 180hp  |
| <b>Model Code</b>                               | KBDGH                      |
| <b>Homologation Standard</b>                    | € 6.3                      |
| <b>Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) kg</b> | 600                        |
| <b>Unbraked trailer (kg)</b>                    | 600                        |
| <b>Max authorized nose weight (kg)</b>          | 80                         |
| <b>Cubic capacity (cc)</b>                      | 1,598                      |
| <b>Max power EC standard (kW)</b>               | 132kW / 300Nm              |
| <b>Fuel</b>                                     | Unleaded Gasoline          |

**MHEV**

(\*): depending on destination

| Engine                                   | Hybrid 145 hp Automatic                                       | Hybrid 145 hp Automatic (export *) |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Code                                     | EB2LTDH2 eDCT6                                                |                                    |
| Model Code                               | KAHPY1                                                        |                                    |
| Homologation standard                    | €6ebis                                                        |                                    |
| Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) kg | 1000 (Aftersales installation)<br>1200 (Factory installation) | 600                                |
| Unbraked trailer (kg)                    | 750                                                           | 600                                |
| Max authorized nose weight (kg)          | 80                                                            |                                    |
| Gearbox / Engine                         | Electric dual-clutch automatic 6 speed                        |                                    |
| Cubic capacity (cc)                      | 1.199                                                         |                                    |
| Max power EC standard (kW)               | 100 kW / 230Nm                                                |                                    |
| Fuel                                     | Unleaded Gasoline                                             |                                    |
| Electric Motor                           |                                                               |                                    |
| Technology                               | Synchronous with permanent magnets                            |                                    |
| Max power EC standard (kW)               | 15.6                                                          |                                    |
| Traction Battery                         |                                                               |                                    |
| Technology                               | Lithium-Ion                                                   |                                    |
| Voltage (Volts DC)                       | 48                                                            |                                    |
| Installed capacity (kWh)                 | 0.9                                                           |                                    |
| Combined power (kW CE/chCE)              | 107/145                                                       |                                    |

## PHEV

|                                                 |                                            |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <b>Engine</b>                                   | <b>Plug-In Hybrid 195 hp Automatic</b>     |
| <b>Code</b>                                     | EP6LTCHPD eDCT7                            |
| <b>Model Code</b>                               | KBDGK                                      |
| <b>Homologation standard</b>                    | €6.4                                       |
| <b>Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) kg</b> | 1550                                       |
| <b>Unbraked trailer (kg)</b>                    | 750                                        |
| <b>Max authorized nose weight (kg)</b>          | 80                                         |
| <b>Gearbox / Engine</b>                         | Electric dual-clutch automatic 7 speed     |
| <b>Cubic capacity (cc)</b>                      | 1.598                                      |
| <b>Max power EC standard (kW)</b>               | 110kW / 300Nm                              |
| <b>Fuel</b>                                     | Unleaded Gasoline                          |
| <b>Electric Motor Technology</b>                | Synchronous with permanent magnets         |
| <b>Max power EC standard (kW)</b>               | 92                                         |
| <b>Traction Battery Technology</b>              | Lithium-Ion                                |
| <b>Voltage (Volts DC)</b>                       | 270-408                                    |
| <b>Installed capacity (kWh)</b>                 | 21.5                                       |
| <b>Combined power (kW CE/chCE)</b>              | 143/195                                    |
| <b>Domestic charging</b>                        | <b>Mode 2</b>                              |
| Alternating current (AC) voltage Rating (A)     | 230 (single-phase) 8 or 16                 |
| <b>Accelerated charging</b>                     | <b>Mode 3</b>                              |
| Alternating current (AC) voltage Rating (A)     | 230 (single-phase or three-phase) 16 or 32 |

**BEV**

(\*) : depending on destination

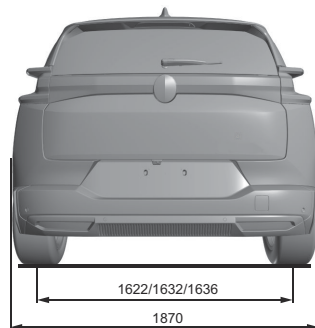
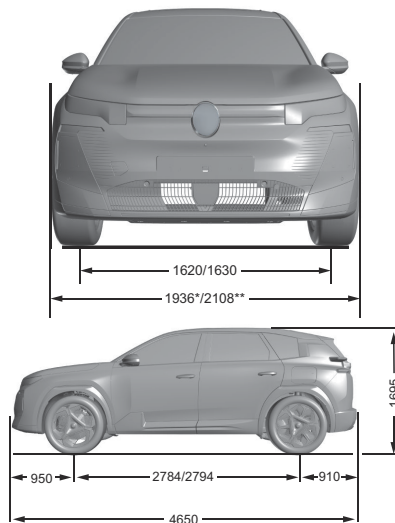
| Engine                                      | ELECTRIC 210hp Comfort Range Automatic     | ELECTRIC 230hp Long Range Automatic |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Code                                        | ZLC RGML 210hp                             | ZLC RGML 230hp                      |
| Model Code                                  | KCZKZ                                      | KCZKM                               |
| Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) kg    | 1250/600(*)                                | 1200                                |
| Unbraked trailer (kg)                       | 750/600(*)                                 | 750                                 |
| Max authorized nose weight (kg)             | 80                                         |                                     |
| Gearbox / Engine                            | Reductor                                   |                                     |
| Traction Battery                            |                                            |                                     |
| Technology                                  | Lithium-Ion                                |                                     |
| Installed capacity (kWh)                    | 78.9                                       | 100.7                               |
| Combined Power                              | 157/210                                    | 170/230                             |
| Domestic charging                           | Mode 2                                     |                                     |
| Alternating current (AC) voltage Rating (A) | 230 (single-phase) 8 or 16                 |                                     |
| Accelerated charging                        | Mode 3                                     |                                     |
| Alternating current (AC) voltage Rating (A) | 230 (single-phase or three-phase) 16 or 32 |                                     |
| Superfast charging                          | Mode 4                                     |                                     |
| Direct current (DC) voltage                 | 400                                        |                                     |

## DIMENSIONS

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.

\* With mirrors folded.

\*\* With mirrors unfolded.



## Wheels and Tires

Your vehicle can be fitted with tires of various sizes:

- 225/60 R18 (ICE/MHEV)
- 225/55 R19 (ICE/MHEV)
- 235/55 R19 (PHEV/BEV)
- 235/50 R20 (PHEV/BEV)

When changing worn tires, ensure that you select a replacement that is suitable for your vehicle.

## TIRE MARKINGS / DESIGNATIONS

E.g. **215/60 R17 96H**

- 21** tire width, mm
- 5**
- 60** cross-section ratio (tire height to tire width), %
- R** belt type: Radial

**RF** type: RunFlat

**15** wheel diameter, inches

**91** load index e.g. 95 is equivalent to 615 kg

**T** speed code letter

Speed code letter:

**Q** up to 100 mph (160 km/h)

**S** up to 112 mph (180 km/h)

**T** up to 118 mph (190 km/h)

**H** up to 130 mph (210 km/h)

**V** up to 150 mph (240 km/h)

**W** up to 168 mph (270 km/h)

Choose a tire appropriate for the maximum speed of the vehicle.

The maximum speed is achievable at kerb weight with driver (75 kg) plus 125 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the maximum speed of the vehicle.

### Directional Tires

Directional tires should be mounted so that they rotate in the correct direction. The proper rotation direction is indicated by a symbol (e.g. an arrow) on the sidewall.

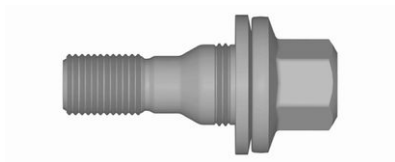
## TIGHTENING TORQUES



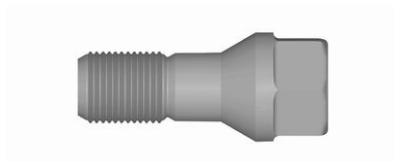
### Warning

Ensure to use always the correct wheel bolts if changing the wheels. When installing the spare wheel for temporary usage, the bolts for alloy wheel rims can also be used.

Depending on version, there are two sizes of bolt:



Tightening torque for M12 bolts is 115 Nm.



Tightening torque for M14 bolts is ca. 130 Nm.

## TREAD DEPTH

Check tread depth at regular intervals.

For safety reasons, it is recommended that the tread depth of the tyres on one axle should not vary by more than 2 mm.



The legally permissible minimum tread depth (1.6 mm) has been reached when the tread has worn down as far as one of the tread wear indicators (TWI). Their position is indicated by markings on the sidewall.

If there is more wear at the front than the rear, swap round front wheels and rear wheels periodically. If directional tyres are mounted, ensure that the direction of rotation of the wheels remains the same.

Tyres age, even if they are not used.

We recommend tyre replacement every 6 years.

# Vehicle data recording and privacy

## INTRODUCTION

Electronic control units are installed in your vehicle. These control units process data received from the vehicle's sensors, for example, or data they generate themselves or exchange with each other. Some of these control units are required for the correct operation of your vehicle, some others assist you while driving (driving or manoeuvring aids), while others provide comfort or infotainment functions.

The following contains general information about how data is processed within the vehicle. You will find additional information about the specific data which is downloaded, stored and transmitted to third parties and what it is used for in your vehicle under the keyword "Data protection". This information is directly associated with the references for the functions in question contained in the corresponding vehicle handbook. These are also available in the general terms of sale of the vehicle, in the general terms of sale of connected services, or online on the brand website.

## PERSONAL REFERENCE

Each vehicle is identified by means of a unique chassis number. Further options, such as the vehicle's number plate, make it possible to trace data on the keeper or driver of the vehicle. The data generated or processed by control units may therefore be personal, or be made personal under certain conditions. Depending

on what vehicle data is available, conclusions may be drawn on information such as your driving behaviour, your location or the route you travel, or on your usage behaviour.

## OPERATING DATA IN THE VEHICLE

The control units process the data used for the operation of the vehicle.

This data includes, for example:

- Information about the state of the vehicle (e.g. speed, travel time, lateral acceleration, wheel rotation rate, fastened seat belts display).
- Environmental conditions (e.g. temperature, rain sensor, distance sensor).

As a general rule, this data is temporary, is not stored for longer than one operating cycle and is only used within the vehicle itself. The control units often record this data (including the vehicle's key). This function allows either the temporary or permanent storage of information about the state of the vehicle, stresses on components, servicing requirements, as well as events and technical errors.

## TECHNICAL DATA OF THE VEHICLE

Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, the data stored is as follows:

- Operating state of system components (e.g. filling level, tyre pressures, battery charge status).
- Faults and malfunctions in important system components (e.g. lights, brakes).
- System reactions in specific driving situations (e.g. deployment of an airbag,

triggering of stability control and braking systems).

- Information about events which have damaged the vehicle.
- For electric and rechargeable hybrid vehicles, the traction battery charge level and the estimated driving range.
- Cyber-security events (e.g. unexpected established connections with unknown systems, unexpected reboots, and any abnormal system configurations).
- Exact mileage or timestamp of recorded events (detection of internal malfunctions, activation of specific systems, etc.), allowing to locate them in time.
- Dynamic data recorded few seconds before and after specific driving events, such as accidents, collisions or activations of Advanced Driver Assistance Systems (ADAS): driving data (e.g. speed, acceleration, steering angle, engine speed, selected ratio on the gearbox, pedals pressure), and potential very low-resolution pictures of the sight in front of the vehicle (only if ADAS Data Recorder (ADR) system is activated).

In particular circumstances (e.g. if the vehicle has detected a malfunction), it may be necessary to record data which would otherwise simply not be stored.

## MAINTENANCE AND REPAIR ACTIVITIES

When taking your vehicle in for servicing (e.g. repairs, maintenance), the stored operating data may be read along with the vehicle's identification number and used if necessary.

The personnel working for the servicing network (e.g. garages, manufacturers) or third parties (e.g. roadside assistance agents) may read the vehicle's data. This also applies to work carried out under warranty and quality assurance measures.

This data is generally read via the OBD (On-Board Diagnostics) port fitted by law to the vehicle. It is used to report on the technical state of the vehicle or its components and facilitates the diagnosis of malfunctions, in compliance with warranty obligations and for quality improvement. This data, in particular the information relating to stress on components, technical events, operator errors and other malfunctions, is sent to the Manufacturer, if necessary, along with the vehicle's identification number. The Manufacturer's liability may also be engaged. The Manufacturer may also use the operating data taken from the vehicle for product recalls. This data may also be used to check the customer's warranty and any claims made under warranty.

Any malfunctions stored in the vehicle may be reset by an after-sales service company during servicing or repair work, or at your request.

## ADAS DATA RECORDER (ADR) SYSTEM

Depending on its level of equipment, your vehicle may be equipped with an ADAS Data Recorder system that continuously process pictures and driving data, and record them inside your vehicle when specific Advanced Driver Assistance Systems (ADAS) are triggered (e.g. intelligent emergency braking assistance, interruption of semi-automatic lane changing, where applicable). This system aims to provide

pieces of understanding for ADAS behaviour, by collecting data every time ADAS are triggered. Concerned data is greyed low-resolution pictures of the sight in front of the vehicle and dynamic driving data (e.g. speed, acceleration, steering angle, brake pressure pedal, blinker status, accelerator pedal position), both sampled every seconds just before and just after the event. Exact mileage and timestamping of the event are also recorded. Resolution of stored pictures is too low to allow recognition of faces, to read licence plates, or to interpret panels on the roadside. All this stored information can only be extracted from your vehicle near an approved repairer workshop, via a special equipment connected by wire to the OBD port. This can be done upon a request on your side for ADAS explanation, or in the context of a legal investigation concerning your vehicle. This system only aims to provide explanatory context of ADAS activations. Only activation of specific ADAS systems can trigger it; this system is never directly triggered by detection of accidents or collisions without ADAS activation. In case where ADAS are deactivated, ADR system will not record any data.

## EVENT DATA RECORDER (EDR) SYSTEM

In addition, depending on country of sale and upon legal obligations, your vehicle may also be equipped with an Event Data Recorder system that records data in case of accident or collision, whatever the activation status of your ADAS systems. Pursuant to the Regulation (EU) 2022/545, the EDR system is a legal obligation in the Europe Market, and in other countries

according to UN Regulation No 160; its purpose is to freeze driving data when accidents or collisions occur.

Contrary to the ADR system above described, pictures of the scene are never recorded by EDR system. Data can only be read through OBD port via a special equipment that law enforcement agencies may use to analyse the context of an accident involving your vehicle. Except in exceptional cases, repairers do not own this equipment.

For more information on the **Event Data Recorder**, please refer to the "**In case of emergency**" section of this document.

## COMFORT AND INFOTAINMENT FUNCTIONS

Comfort settings and personalised settings may be saved in the vehicle and modified or reinitialised at any time.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, this may include:

- Seat and steering wheel position settings.
- Chassis and air conditioning settings.
- Personalised settings such as the interior lighting.

You can enter your own data into the functions of your vehicle's audio and telematic system, as part of the selected functionalities.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, this may include:

- Multimedia data such as music, videos or photos to be read by an integrated multimedia system.

- Address book data to be used with an integrated hands-free system or with an integrated navigation system.
- Entered destinations.
- Data regarding the use of online services.

This data for the comfort and infotainment functions may be stored locally in the vehicle or saved to a device that you have connected to the vehicle (e.g. smartphone, USB memory stick or MP3 player). Data that you have entered yourself may be deleted at any time.

This data may also be transmitted outside the vehicle at your request, particularly when using online services in line with the settings that you have selected.

## **SMARTPHONE INTEGRATION (E.G. ANDROID AUTO® OR APPLE® CARPLAY®)**

If your vehicle is equipped accordingly, you can connect your smartphone or another mobile device to the vehicle in order to operate it using the vehicle's integrated controls. Images and sounds from the smartphone can be transmitted through the audio and telematics system. Specific information is simultaneously sent to your smartphone. Depending on the type of integration, this includes data such as location, day/night mode and other general information about the vehicle. For more information, please refer to the user instructions for the vehicle or the audio and telematics system.

Integrating a smartphone allows you to use its applications, such as a navigation app or music player. No other integration between the smartphone and the vehicle is possible,

in particular active access to vehicle data. How the data is processed subsequently is determined by the supplier of the application being used. The ability to change settings depends on the application in question and on the operating system installed on your smartphone.

## **ONLINE SERVICES - "OVER-THE-AIR" CONNECTIVITY**

If your vehicle is connected to a wireless network, data can be exchanged between your vehicle and other systems.

Connection to a wireless network is made possible via a transmitter located in your vehicle or a mobile device that you have provided (e.g. smartphone). The online services can be used via this wireless connection. These include online services and applications (apps) provided to you by the Manufacturer or other suppliers.

### **Proprietary services**

As regards the Manufacturer's online services, the corresponding functions are described by the Manufacturer in an appropriate medium (e.g. handbook, Manufacturer's website) and the information about data protection is provided. Personal data may be used for online services. The exchange of data for this purpose takes place over a secure connection, using for example the Manufacturer's dedicated computer systems. The collection, processing and use of personal data for the development of services are carried out solely on the basis of a legal authorisation, for example in the case of a legal emergency call system, or a contractual agreement or else under a consent agreement.

You can activate or deactivate the services and functions (some may be chargeable) and, in some cases, the vehicle's entire connection to the wireless network. This does not include legally required functions and services such as an emergency communication system.

### **Third-party services**

If you use online services provided by other (third-party) suppliers, these services are subject to the responsibility, the data protection and the terms and conditions of use of the supplier in question. The Manufacturer often has no influence over the content exchanged in this regard.

Please therefore ensure that you are aware of the nature, extent and purpose of the collection and use of personal data as part of the third-party services provided by the service provider in question.

## **ONLINE SERVICES BASED ON CONTRACTUAL AGREEMENTS**

Your vehicle may disclose and receive data by "Over-The-Air" connectivity to perform services explicitly requested by a service subscriber. During the subscription process, we check by different means the legitimacy of the requester considered as vehicle's owner to activate services on the vehicle.

For more details on those services, please ask the service subscriber to provide the relative Terms and Conditions accepted. You can find them from the Brand Mobile app or the Brand website, after being connected with a Stellantis account.

## PROTECTING MEASURES AGAINST CYBER-ATTACKS

Depending to the model, your vehicle may be equipped with a system that detects cyber-attack attempts or unexpected events from a cyber-security point of view. This system, when fitted inside the vehicle, is working for the entire life cycle of the vehicle.

When cyber-security events are detected (e.g. unexpected established connections with unknown systems, unexpected reboots, and any abnormal system configurations), log files are generated, temporally stored inside your vehicle and then sent to the Manufacturer's infrastructures by "Over-The-Air" connectivity. Those log files are analysed by the Manufacturer's Security Operational Centre (SOC) to define appropriate measures protecting vehicles from malicious interactions with electronic components. Such measures could be the deployment of software and firmware updates.

The purpose of this system is thus to enhance cyber-security measures set up inside vehicles. It also directly participates to the securitisation of your vehicle's connectivity and allows the correct performance of online services activated on your vehicle. Ways to exercise your Privacy rights to this processing are described within the European Connected Vehicles Privacy Policy of Stellantis (see below).

## APPLYING LEGAL OBLIGATIONS AND RESPECTIVE REQUIREMENTS

This list can change according to European regulations. Please consult online this document to be sure to have the up-to-date list

of applying regulations in EU. Depending of the date of the Type Approval of the vehicle, some regulations cannot apply. Generally, these legal obligations can disclose data independently of the in-vehicle privacy settings.

### eCall - Emergency Call

This function will be provided for the entire life cycle of the VEHICLE.

This function, where operational, is provided through the public emergency service of each country where you are driving. It doesn't matter where you bought your vehicle or where it is registered.

In the event of a significant impact or a serious accident recorded by the DEVICE on the VEHICLE, with consequent shutdown of the VEHICLE itself, a phone call is automatically forwarded from the VEHICLE to the respective public emergency number (call to '112' within Europe), together with the transmission of the minimum data needed for identification and location of the VEHICLE (i.e. your exact location, the time of the accident, your vehicle's identification number and direction of travel). This information is only transmitted from your vehicle in the event of a serious accident; it allows the public emergency services to assess and manage your situation. The public emergency services will act according to local legislation and their own operating procedures. Within Europe, the 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and should therefore be accessible free of charge to all consumers.

According to Regulation (EU) 2015/758, this system is mandatory for all new types of vehicle approved for manufacture after 31 March 2018.

The eCall system is only activated if your vehicle is involved in a serious accident. The rest of the time the system remains inactive. This means that when you are simply driving your vehicle, no permanent tracking (registering your car's position or monitoring your driving) or transmission of data takes place on behalf of this regulatory service.

### OBFCM - On-Board Fuel Consumption Meter

This SERVICE is provided for 15 years after the vehicle is first put into circulation.

In accordance with Article 9 of Implementing Regulation (EU) 2021/392 ("OBFCM"), this regulatory service allows the European Environment Agency (EEA) to collect vehicle data related to usage (such as VIN, total distance travelled, total fuel consumed, total grid energy into battery when applicable). This data is used by EEA to monitor in real usage the fuel and energy consumption and the CO2 emission of the new vehicles, in an anonymised and aggregated way. As mentioned in OBFCM regulation, the CUSTOMER can refuse the collection and transmission of vehicle's data for regulatory OBFCM purpose. This can be done by contacting the Customer Care Centre (contact information available on the brand website available for your country).

### SLI - Speed Limit Information

This function will be provided for the entire life cycle of the VEHICLE, only for vehicles sold inside the Europe Market.

Pursuant to the Regulation (EU) 2018/858 on the approval and market surveillance of motor vehicles and their trailers, and of systems, components and separate technical units

intended for such vehicles dated 30 May 2018, as amended by the Regulation (EU) 2019/2144 dated 27 November 2019 and the Commission Delegated Regulation (EU) 2021/1958 dated 23 June 2021 (together the "GSR V2 Regulations"), car manufacturers are required to equip new vehicles sold in Europe with various systems aiming at guaranteeing the overall safety of such vehicles.

As per Article 6 of the Regulation (EU) 2019/2144, such systems must include an "intelligent speed assistance" system (hereinafter "ISA") that provides the applicable speed limit to the driver for at least 90% of the total distance and for at least 80% of the distance driven on each of the three road types (urban roads and streets, non-urban roads, and motorways/expressways/dual carriageways). SLI function provides the driver with the applicable speed limit on the road where driver travels. SLI function aims to improve the safety by allowing the vehicle to display in real time applicable speed limit, even when external conditions doesn't not permit it (e.g. weather, sign hidden by another vehicle). The applicable speed limit is retrieved from the front camera of the vehicle and maybe completed through Over-The-Air communication system to improve the reliability of information according to the vehicle definition. To get valid speed limit information, the vehicle's current position is sent via the telematics unit and is immediately deleted after processing. Tracking of the vehicle position is not possible at any time. This is not impacted by the privacy settings of the vehicle.

As required by the "GSR V2 Regulations", this SLI feature is activated by default at key on, but can be partially deactivated at every time by the user of the vehicle, given that the driver

may cut the audible warning function from the vehicle's settings available from the central touch screen. This will not impact the visual warning function that will stay active and may still require Over-The-Air data transmission of current vehicle's position for accurate speed limit detection. Depending on the model of your vehicle, it may be possible to also fully cut the SLI function (i.e. to stop speed limit detection and speed limit warning function) from the central touch screen, and thus cut the data transmission for the current trip.

### **Mileage disclosure to the Car-Pass association**

(Only for vehicles registered in Belgium)  
This disclosure is active in Belgium only, as an answer to a Belgium law in order to prevent vehicle mileage fraud (Belgium law of 28 November 2018, applicable from 01/01/2020). It is provided lifetime, as long as the Car-Pass association requests the data. It consists in providing 4 times a year the mileage of any vehicle registered in Belgium to Car-Pass, an association delegated by Belgian authorities to collect and control this data. This mileage is collected over-the-air by Stellantis if another connected service already uses it. This data is transmitted to the Car-Pass association, upon request by this organism. For more information, please refer to the Car-Pass privacy policy (<https://www.car-pass.be/en/privacy-policy>).

## **DATA USE - PRODUCT QUALITY IMPROVEMENT**

You acknowledge and agree that to improve the quality of the products produced by STELLANTIS AUTO SAS as a car maker,

your Vehicle Data (as defined in the Stellantis Privacy Policy for connected services, see below) – excluding the geolocation of the vehicle – are transferred to the car maker for the purpose of anomalies avoidance, aggregated data analysis for product improvement or creation of new products. Further information on this, and ways to exercise your Privacy rights to this processing, are described in the Stellantis Privacy Policy for connected services (see below).

## **EUROPEAN CONNECTED VEHICLES PRIVACY POLICY OF STELLANTIS**

The Privacy Policy for Connected Vehicles ("Privacy Policy") applies to the Personal Data we process about users of the connected services through our Vehicle, our Websites or Application who have signed the General Conditions as a Customer or who are authorised by a Customer to access and use the connected services.

This Privacy Policy is drafted pursuant Article 13 of the EU Regulation 679/2016 and will help you understand better how we handle your information.

In this document, you will find some examples of how we process Personal Data, and Definitions referring to more detailed explanations (at the end this Privacy Policy). If you would like any clarifications regarding this Privacy Policy or how your data are processed, please send your request to: [dataprotectionofficer@stellantis.com](mailto:dataprotectionofficer@stellantis.com). This document is available on brand websites, in the section dedicated to connected services. It is also available at the following link: <https://connected-vehicles-privacy.stellantis.com/>

**Tip****Declarations of conformity for radio equipment**

The relevant certificates are available on the brand website: <https://service.citroen.com/ACddb/index.html>



# Index

## A

|                                      |        |
|--------------------------------------|--------|
| ABS .....                            | 138    |
| Accelerated charging unit .....      | 119    |
| Accessories                          |        |
| electrical .....                     | 183    |
| Active emergency braking .....       | 132    |
| Active Emergency Braking .....       | 105    |
| Adaptive headlight lighting .....    | 49     |
| Adjusting head restraints .....      | 23     |
| Adjusting seat .....                 | 22, 25 |
| Adjusting the air distribution ..... | 74     |
| Adjusting the air flow .....         | 73     |
| Adjusting the lumbar support .....   | 25     |
| Adjusting the seat angle .....       | 25     |
| Adjusting the time .....             | 97     |
| Advanced Traction Control .....      | 111    |
| Advice on driving .....              | 125    |
| Air conditioning .....               | 75     |
| automatic .....                      | 73, 75 |
| Air intake .....                     | 73, 74 |
| Air vents .....                      | 74     |
| Airbag                               |        |
| deactivation .....                   | 33     |
| Airbags .....                        | 1, 30  |
| curtain .....                        | 33     |
| front .....                          | 32     |
| lateral .....                        | 32     |
| Anti-lock braking system (ABS) ..... | 138    |
| Applications .....                   | 76, 85 |
| Armrest                              |        |
| rear .....                           | 55     |
| Assistance call .....                | 86     |
| Audio streaming                      |        |
| Bluetooth .....                      | 94     |

|                               |    |
|-------------------------------|----|
| Automatic light control ..... | 46 |
|-------------------------------|----|

## B

|                                |          |
|--------------------------------|----------|
| Battery                        |          |
| charging .....                 | 177      |
| remote control .....           | 11       |
| Battery Electric Vehicle ..... | 5        |
| Battery preconditioning .....  | 120      |
| Battery, ancillaries .....     | 177      |
| Blind .....                    | 54       |
| Bluetooth .....                |          |
| hands-free .....               | 90       |
| phone .....                    | 90       |
| Bodywork .....                 | 193      |
| Brake discs .....              | 126      |
| Braking .....                  | 105, 106 |
| dynamic emergency .....        | 105      |

## C

|                                           |       |
|-------------------------------------------|-------|
| Care of the bodywork .....                | 193   |
| Catalytic converter .....                 | 112   |
| Central locking .....                     | 13    |
| Changing the remote control battery ..... | 11    |
| Changing to free-wheeling .....           | 108   |
| Charger                                   |       |
| wireless .....                            | 57    |
| Charging cable .....                      | 115   |
| Charging cable (Electric) .....           | 59    |
| Child lock .....                          | 15    |
| Child seats .....                         | 1, 34 |
| conventional .....                        | 37    |
| ISOFIX .....                              | 36    |

|                         |        |
|-------------------------|--------|
| Children .....          | 34     |
| Children (safety) ..... | 15     |
| Cleaning .....          | 190    |
| Closing the doors ..... | 10     |
| Connection              |        |
| Bluetooth .....         | 89     |
| Connectivity .....      | 89, 90 |
| Control                 |        |
| emergency door .....    | 12     |
| Control unit .....      | 118    |
| Controls                |        |
| steering mounted .....  | 109    |
| Courtesy lights .....   | 53     |
| Cruise control          |        |
| adaptive .....          | 158    |
| Customization .....     | 83     |

## D

|                                   |     |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| Date                              |     |
| setting .....                     | 97  |
| Deadlocking .....                 | 10  |
| Defrosting .....                  | 22  |
| Demisting .....                   | 22  |
| Diagnosis .....                   | 205 |
| Dimensions .....                  | 202 |
| Display, head-up .....            | 22  |
| Domestic charging .....           | 118 |
| Driver's attention warning .....  | 153 |
| Driving .....                     | 125 |
| Driving aids camera               |     |
| warnings .....                    | 128 |
| Driving modes (Electric) .....    | 110 |
| Driving positions (storing) ..... | 22  |

|                                                  |            |  |
|--------------------------------------------------|------------|--|
| <b>E</b>                                         |            |  |
| e-Auto mode (Hybrid) .....                       | 102        |  |
| EBFD .....                                       | 138        |  |
| eCall - Emergency Call .....                     | 168        |  |
| ECO mode .....                                   | 110        |  |
| Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) ..... | 137        |  |
| Emergency switching off .....                    | 99         |  |
| Emergency warning lights .....                   | 168, 169   |  |
| Energy economy (mode) .....                      | 102        |  |
| Energy economy mode .....                        | 102        |  |
| Energy recovery .....                            | 105, 106   |  |
| Engine                                           |            |  |
| 48 V hybrid .....                                | 102        |  |
| petrol .....                                     | 189, 198   |  |
| Engine compartment .....                         | 189        |  |
| Engine coolant .....                             | 187        |  |
| Engines .....                                    | 197, 198   |  |
| Environment .....                                | 11, 204    |  |
| Event data recorder .....                        | 1, 182     |  |
| Exhaust filter .....                             | 111        |  |
| Extended traffic sign recognition .....          | 164        |  |
| <b>F</b>                                         |            |  |
| Fatigue detection .....                          | 153        |  |
| Filter                                           |            |  |
| passenger compartment .....                      | 73         |  |
| Filter, passenger compartment .....              | 73         |  |
| Fitting a wheel .....                            | 174        |  |
| Fitting roof bars .....                          | 122        |  |
| Fittings                                         |            |  |
| front .....                                      | 56         |  |
| rear .....                                       | 57         |  |
| Flap                                             |            |  |
| charging .....                                   | 116        |  |
| Flat bed                                         |            |  |
| towing .....                                     | 180        |  |
| Floor                                            |            |  |
| adjustable .....                                 | 59         |  |
| boot .....                                       | 59         |  |
| Folding the rear seats .....                     | 28         |  |
| Forward collision warning .....                  | 131        |  |
| Frequency                                        |            |  |
| radio .....                                      | 94         |  |
| <b>G</b>                                         |            |  |
| Gearbox                                          |            |  |
| automatic .....                                  | 177        |  |
| Glove box .....                                  | 55         |  |
| <b>H</b>                                         |            |  |
| Hands-free access .....                          | 18         |  |
| Hands-free tailgate .....                        | 18         |  |
| Hazard warning lights .....                      | 169        |  |
| Head restraints                                  |            |  |
| front .....                                      | 23         |  |
| rear .....                                       | 24         |  |
| Head-up display .....                            | 1, 77      |  |
| Headlights                                       |            |  |
| main beam .....                                  | 48         |  |
| Heated and ventilated seats .....                | 26, 27     |  |
| Heated steering wheel .....                      | 43         |  |
| Heating .....                                    | 73         |  |
| Hill Assist Descent Control (HADC) .....         | 163        |  |
| Hill start assist .....                          | 164        |  |
| Hood .....                                       | 188        |  |
| Horn .....                                       | 43         |  |
| Hybrid                                           |            |  |
| 48 V mild .....                                  | 102        |  |
| Hybrid system .....                              | 4          |  |
| <b>I</b>                                         |            |  |
| Ignition .....                                   | 100        |  |
| Ignition on .....                                | 100        |  |
| Inflating tires and accessories                  |            |  |
| using the kit .....                              | 174, 176   |  |
| Inflating tyres .....                            | 197        |  |
| Information                                      |            |  |
| vehicle .....                                    | 63         |  |
| Instrument panel .....                           | 63         |  |
| Interior Care .....                              | 1, 193     |  |
| ISOFIX mountings .....                           | 36, 38, 39 |  |
| <b>J</b>                                         |            |  |
| Jack .....                                       | 171        |  |
| <b>K</b>                                         |            |  |
| Key .....                                        | 1, 8, 9    |  |
| electronic .....                                 | 8, 9       |  |
| Key with remote control .....                    | 8, 99      |  |
| Keyless Entry and Starting .....                 | 8, 9, 100  |  |
| Kit                                              |            |  |
| hands-free .....                                 | 90         |  |
| temporary puncture repair .....                  | 169        |  |
| <b>L</b>                                         |            |  |
| Labels                                           |            |  |
| identification .....                             | 115        |  |
| Lane keeping assist .....                        | 139        |  |
| Lane positioning assist .....                    | 143        |  |

|                                           |     |
|-------------------------------------------|-----|
| LEDs - Light-emitting diodes .....        | 47  |
| Light-emitting diodes - LEDs .....        | 47  |
| Lighting .....                            |     |
| boot .....                                | 59  |
| guide-me home .....                       | 52  |
| interior .....                            | 53  |
| welcome .....                             | 52  |
| Lighting dimmer .....                     | 77  |
| lights with Full LED technology .....     | 47  |
| Load reduction mode .....                 | 103 |
| Loading .....                             | 122 |
| Locking from the inside .....             | 13  |
| Locking the doors .....                   | 13  |
| Locking, automatic .....                  | 13  |
| Long-distance blind spot monitoring ..... | 138 |
| Lumbar .....                              | 25  |

## M

|                                    |         |
|------------------------------------|---------|
| Maneuvering aids .....             |         |
| recommendations .....              | 128     |
| Markings .....                     |         |
| identification .....               | 197     |
| Massage function .....             | 27      |
| Massage multi-point .....          | 27      |
| MHEV .....                         | 113     |
| Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle ..... | 4       |
| Mirrors .....                      |         |
| door .....                         | 22, 138 |
| Mobile application .....           | 97      |
| Motor .....                        |         |
| BEV .....                          | 189     |
| electric .....                     | 110     |
| Motorized tailgate .....           | 18      |
| Mountings .....                    |         |
| ISOFIX .....                       | 36, 39  |

## N

|                         |     |
|-------------------------|-----|
| Net .....               |     |
| luggage retaining ..... | 58  |
| Normal mode .....       | 110 |

## O

|                         |    |
|-------------------------|----|
| On-board tools .....    | 59 |
| Opening the doors ..... | 9  |

## P

|                                         |        |
|-----------------------------------------|--------|
| Paint .....                             | 193    |
| Paint color code .....                  | 197    |
| Park assist .....                       | 146    |
| Parking assist .....                    | 146    |
| Parking sensors .....                   |        |
| audible and visual .....                | 150    |
| Pedestrian horn (PHEV) .....            | 13     |
| Periodic Checks .....                   | 184    |
| phone .....                             | 75, 84 |
| Plates .....                            |        |
| identification .....                    | 197    |
| Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle .....   | 5      |
| Port .....                              |        |
| USB .....                               | 56     |
| Power .....                             | 65     |
| Pressures .....                         |        |
| tires .....                             | 176    |
| tyres .....                             | 197    |
| Profiles .....                          | 81     |
| Protecting children .....               | 34     |
| Proximity Keyless Entry and Start ..... | 9      |

## R

|                                                             |          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Radar .....                                                 |          |
| warnings .....                                              | 128      |
| Radio .....                                                 | 93-95    |
| Reading lights .....                                        |          |
| touch-sensitive .....                                       | 53       |
| Rear camera .....                                           | 148      |
| Rear cross traffic alert .....                              | 151      |
| Recharging the battery .....                                | 177      |
| Recirculation .....                                         |          |
| air .....                                                   | 74       |
| Recorder .....                                              |          |
| trip distance .....                                         | 64       |
| Reduction of electrical load .....                          |          |
| mode .....                                                  | 103      |
| Regenerative braking (deceleration by engine braking) ..... | 105, 106 |
| Reinitializing the under-inflation detection system .....   | 167      |
| Remote control .....                                        | 8, 12    |
| Removing a wheel .....                                      | 171      |
| Removing the mat .....                                      | 58       |
| Resetting the trip .....                                    | 65       |
| Road sign recognition .....                                 | 165      |
| Roof bars .....                                             | 122      |

## S

|                                    |     |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| Safety .....                       |     |
| children .....                     | 34  |
| Seat belts .....                   | 28  |
| Seats .....                        |     |
| electric .....                     | 25  |
| heated .....                       | 26  |
| Seats, heated .....                | 27  |
| Semi-automatic lane changing ..... | 144 |

|                                           |                |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------|
| Sensors/warnings .....                    | 129            |
| Serial number                             |                |
| vehicle .....                             | 197            |
| Settings                                  |                |
| equipment .....                           | 63, 76         |
| Silent vehicle warning sound (PHEV) ..... | 12             |
| Smartphone .....                          | 57, 91, 92, 94 |
| Socket                                    |                |
| diagnostic .....                          | 5, 183         |
| Spare wheel .....                         | 170            |
| Speed limit recognition .....             | 165            |
| Speed limiter .....                       | 155            |
| Sport mode .....                          | 110, 111       |
| Spotlights                                |                |
| side .....                                | 53             |
| Starting the engine .....                 | 1, 99          |
| Starting the vehicle .....                | 99             |
| Starting/Stopping the vehicle .....       | 99             |
| Station                                   |                |
| radio .....                               | 93             |
| Stay                                      |                |
| engine hood .....                         | 189            |
| Steering wheel .....                      | 43             |
| Steering wheel (adjustment) .....         | 43             |
| Stickers                                  |                |
| customizing .....                         | 193            |
| Stop & Start .....                        | 100            |
| Stopping the vehicle .....                | 99             |
| Storage .....                             | 59             |
| Storage box .....                         | 59             |
| Storage wells .....                       | 59             |
| Storing driving positions .....           | 22             |
| Stowing rings .....                       | 59             |
| Sunroof                                   |                |
| panoramic .....                           | 1, 54          |
| Surround Vision .....                     | 149            |
| Switching off the engine .....            | 99             |

|                            |     |
|----------------------------|-----|
| System                     |     |
| event data recording ..... | 182 |

## T

|                                      |                  |
|--------------------------------------|------------------|
| Tables of engines .....              | 198              |
| Tail lights .....                    | 46               |
| Technical data .....                 | 197, 198         |
| Time                                 |                  |
| setting .....                        | 97               |
| Tire designations .....              | 202              |
| Tire Pressure .....                  | 191              |
| Tire under-inflation detection ..... | 166, 176         |
| Top Tether (fixing) .....            | 36, 39           |
| Total distance recorder .....        | 64               |
| Touch screen .....                   | 75, 84           |
| Towed loads .....                    | 197, 198         |
| Towing .....                         | 1, 123, 124, 180 |
| Towing another vehicle .....         | 182              |
| Towing the vehicle .....             | 1, 180           |
| Traction battery charge .....        | 117              |
| Tread depth .....                    | 203              |
| Triangle, warning .....              | 169              |
| Trip computer .....                  | 64               |
| Tyres .....                          | 197              |

## U

|                                 |       |
|---------------------------------|-------|
| Under-inflation                 |       |
| detection .....                 | 166   |
| Unlocking .....                 | 8, 9  |
| Unlocking from the inside ..... | 13    |
| Unlocking the doors .....       | 13    |
| Unlocking the tailgate .....    | 8, 10 |
| Unlocking the trunk .....       | 8, 10 |
| Updating the time .....         | 97    |

## V

|                                          |     |
|------------------------------------------|-----|
| Vehicle data recording and privacy ..... | 204 |
| Visibility .....                         | 49  |

## W

|                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| Wall socket (domestic network) .....  | 115 |
| Warning light                         |     |
| driver's seat belt not fastened ..... | 29  |
| Weights .....                         | 197 |
| Welcome function .....                | 23  |
| Welcome lighting .....                | 52  |
| Wheel                                 |     |
| spare .....                           | 169 |
| windshield                            |     |
| heated .....                          | 21  |



#### Recycled materials/End-of-Life Vehicles

The Manufacturer declares, in accordance with the provisions of European legislation (Directive 2000/53) and The End-of-Life Vehicles (Producer Responsibility) (Amendment) Regulation 2010 No.1094, that it achieves the objectives set by these legislations and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

No part of this document may be reproduced or translated without written permission from the Manufacturer.

#### **Automobiles CITROËN,**

société par actions simplifiée au capital social de 159.000.000 euros dont le siège social est situé **43 rue Jean-Pierre TIMBAUD, 78300 POISSY, FRANCE**, et immatriculée auprès du RCS de Versailles sous le numéro 642 050 199.

Printed in the EU  
05/2025



# Fill-up with confidence

For more than 50 years, TotalEnergies and Citroën have shared common values: excellence, creativity and technological innovation. It is in this same spirit that TotalEnergies has developed a range of Quartz lubricants adapted to Citroën engines making them even more fuel efficient and protective of the environment.

## Keep your engine younger for longer!

Quartz Ineo Xtra First 0W-20 is a very high performance lubricant resulting from the common work of the CITROËN and TotalEnergies R&D teams. Its innovative technology extends your engine's life while reaching significant fuel savings and thus limiting CO2 emissions\*. The product is now available in new packaging\*\* made of 50% recycled material and 100% recyclable.



**CITROËN** prefers **TotalEnergies**

\* This oil information is for reference only. Please refer to your maintenance schedule to verify the specific oil requirements for your vehicle.

\*\*1L & 5L produced in Europe.



CITROËN



TotalEnergies

OFFICIAL PARTNERS

**CC5ACBO2507en-1**

